



6th PRIM.

SECOND TERM

تصريح وتحت إشراف

MINISTRY OF EDUCATION AND TECHNICAL EDUCATION



Contents



الكتاب يحتوى على أسئله كتاب الوزارة.

الكتاب مطابق لأحدث مواصفات وزارية.

الكتاب يحتوى على عرض جديد لل grammar وتدريبات أكثر للطالب.

Theme 3 I discover myself

Theme 4 Myself and others



Theme 3 I discover myself

أنا أكتشف نفسى





Unit 7 Amazing artifacts

قطع أثرية مذهلة

Unit Overview

Student's Book Exercises 
Al-Azhar 
Answers 100% 

- **By the end of this unit, the student will be able to:**
  - listen and read about artifacts in the Museum of Ancient History.
  - listen, read, research, and write about important ancient artifacts.
  - use the past simple.
  - do a quiz about Ancient Egyptian artifacts.
  - read about animals in Ancient Egypt.
  - use prepositions of place.
  - say words with the sound /er/.
  - write a fact file about a metal or material in Ancient Egypt.
  - research and write display boards for artifacts from Ancient Egypt.

- **بنهاية هذه الوحدة، سيكون التلميذ قادرًا على أن:**
  - يستمع ويقرأ عن القطع الأثرية الموجودة فى متحف التاريخ القديم.
  - يستمع، يقرأ، يبحث، ويكتب عن الآثار القديمة الهامة.
  - يستخدم زمن الماضى البسيط.
  - يقوم بعمل اختبار حول آثار مصر القديمة.
  - يقرأ عن الحيوانات فى مصر القديمة.
  - يستخدم حروف الجر الخاصة بالمكان.
  - ينطق كلمات بصوت /er/.
  - يكتب ملف حقائق حول معدن أو مادة فى مصر القديمة.
  - يبحث ويقوم بكتابة لوحات عرض عن الآثار المصرية القديمة.

Did you know?

- An artifact is an object that was made by humans in the past. The *Khufu solar ship is an artifact from Ancient Egypt. It is the world's oldest intact ship.

I can find it out!

- There are many other Ancient Egyptian *artifacts that are wildly famous, such as *Tutankhamun's mask, *the Rosetta Stone that has ancient *hieroglyphic scripts written on it, and *the Mummy of Ramses II.

*Khufu solar ship	سفينة خوفو	*artifacts	آثار قديمة	*Tutankhamun's mask	قناع توت عنخ آمون
*the Rosetta Stone	حجر رشيد	*hieroglyphic scripts	نصوص هيروغليفية	*the Mummy of Ramses II	مومياء رمسيس الثانى



Lesson 1

A visit to the museum

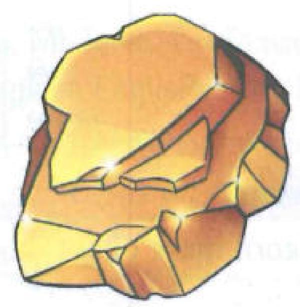
زيارة إلى المتحف



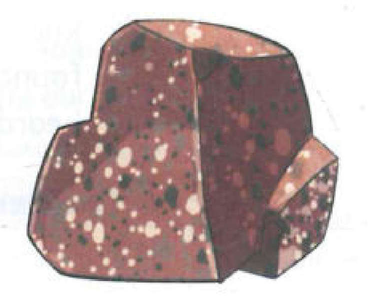


Listen, point, and say: استمع، أشر وقل:

Main vocabulary



gold
ذهب



granite
جرانيت



glass
زجاج



clay
طين / صلصال

Extra vocabulary

the Museum of Ancient History	متحف التاريخ القديم	guide	مرشد
artifacts	آثار/ تحف فنية	Great!	عظيم!
climate	مناخ	certain materials	مواد محددة معينة
durable (adj.)	متين/ صلب	Tutankhamun's tomb	مقبرة توت عنخ آمون
fascinating (adj.)	خلابة / ساحرة	pots	أوانٍ فخارية
stone	حجر	valuable (adj.)	قيم

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs			أفعـــال منتظمـة		
Present		Past	Present		Past
damage	يدمر	damaged	help	يساعد	helped
preserve	يحفظ	preserved	last	يدوم	lasted
like	يحب	liked	use	يستخدم	used
cover	يغطى	covered	enjoy	يستمتع بـ	enjoyed
Irregular verbs			**أفعال غير منتظمة**		
Present		Past	Present		Past
know	يعلم	knew	build	يبنى	built
find	يجد	found	make	يصنع	made
hear	يسمع	heard	keep	يحتفظ بـ	kept

Expressions and Phrases

welcome to + place أهلًا بكم فى ...	excited to learn more about ... متحمس لتعلم المزيد عن
first of all فى البداية (قبل كل شىء)	last a long time يدوم لفترة طويلة
that's why لهذا السبب	last forever يدوم إلى الأبد
keep (something) in good condition يبقى (شيئًا ما) بحالة جيدة	I am happy about that! أنا سعيد من أجل ذلك!

Important sentences جمل هامة

- We're excited to learn more about Ancient Egyptian artifacts.
- نحن متحمسون لمعرفة المزيد عن القطع الأثرية المصرية القديمة.
- We have a hot, dry climate that helps preserve the ancient artifacts.
- لدينا مناخ حار وجاف يساعد فى الحفاظ على القطع الأثرية القديمة.
- Ancient Egyptians built the Pyramids with granite, a very hard and durable stone.
- قام المصريون القدماء ببناء الأهرامات بالجرانيت، وهو حجر صلب ومتين للغاية.
- Ancient Egyptians liked to use gold because it is valuable.
- كان المصريون القدماء يحبون استخدام الذهب لأنه قيم.

Check point

Choose the correct answer: **اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:**

1. (Glass – Gold – Clay – Granite) is a very valuable metal.
2. Ancient Egyptians made pots from (gold – cloth – clay – stone) that they found near the river.
3. (Cloth – Granite – Clay – Glass) is a very durable stone.
4. Cloth, clay, and glass are (museums – stones – artifacts – materials) we can use to make different things.
5. We keep the (granite – stone – clay – artifacts) at the museum because they're valuable.
6. The (Artifact – Museum – Material – Stone) of Ancient History is big and amazing.



Listen, read, and role-play: استمع، اقرأ وتبادل الأدوار:



Mr Tarek

Good morning and welcome to the Museum of Ancient History. My name is Mr Tarek and I am your guide today.

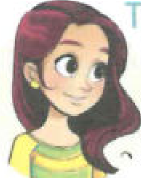
صباح الخير ومرحبا بكم فى متحف التاريخ القديم. اسمى أستاذ طارق وأنا مرشدكم اليوم.



Tamer

Good morning, Mr Tarek. I'm Tamer and this is my sister Tamara. We're students at Egyptian Eagle Primary School, and these are our parents.

صباح الخير، أستاذ طارق، أنا تامر وهذه أختى تمارا. نحن طلاب فى مدرسة «النسر المصرية» الابتدائية، وهؤلاء والدانا.



Tamara

We're excited to learn more about Ancient Egyptian artifacts.

نحن متحمسون لمعرفة المزيد عن القطع الأثرية المصرية القديمة.



Mr Tarek

Great! What would you like to know?

عظيم! ما الذى تودون معرفته؟

Tamara

Well, first of all, why do we have so many artifacts?

حسنًا، فى البداية، (قبل كل شىء) لماذا لدينا الكثير من القطع الأثرية؟



Mr Tarek

That's an interesting question. One reason is the climate. We have a hot, dry climate here in Egypt, so artifacts aren't damaged by cold and wet weather. This helps to preserve them. The Ancient Egyptians also knew that certain materials could last a long time. That's why they built the Pyramids with granite, a very hard and durable stone.

هذا سؤال مثير للاهتمام. أحد أسباب ذلك هو المناخ. لدينا مناخ حار وجاف هنا فى مصر، لذلك لا تتضرر القطع الأثرية من الطقس البارد والرطب. وهذا يساعد فى الحفاظ عليها. عرف المصريون القدماء أن مواد محددة يمكن أن تدوم لفترة طويلة. لهذا السبب بنوا الأهرامات بالجرانيت، وهو حجر متين وصلب للغاية.



Tamer

That's fascinating! What other materials did they use?

هذا رائع! ما هى المواد الأخرى التى استخدموها؟

Mr Tarek



They used a lot of glass, which lasts forever. They also used clay, which is found close to the River Nile, to make pots.

استخدموا الكثير من الزجاج الذى يدوم إلى الأبد. كما استخدموا الطين الذى وجدوه بالقرب من نهر النيل، لصنع الأوانى.



Tamer

I also heard they used a lot of gold in Tutankhamun's tomb.

سمعت أيضًا أنهم استخدموا الكثير من الذهب فى مقبرة توت عنخ آمون.

Mr Tarek



Yes, the Ancient Egyptians liked to use gold because it is valuable, but it is also very durable. When they covered artifacts in gold, they kept them in good condition.

نعم، كان المصريون القدماء يحبون استخدام الذهب لأنه قيم، ولكنه أيضًا متين للغاية. وعندما غطوا القطع الأثرية بالذهب، أبقوها بحالة جيدة.

Tamer

I'm happy about that! It's exciting to enjoy the things they made.

أنا سعيد بذلك! من المثير الاستمتاع بالأشياء التى صنعوها.

Check point

1. Why are Tamer and Tamara at the museum? 

 ....

2. What did the Ancient Egyptians use to make pots?

 ....





• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:
استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة: 6

1. We have many .... in Egypt.
   (a. pyramids – b. tombs – c. artifacts – d. temples)
2. The climate in Egypt is ....
   (a. cold and wet – b. hot and dry – c. cloudy and rainy – d. cool and snowy)
3. Ancient Egyptians used .... to build the Pyramids.
   (a. glass – b. granite – c. clay – d. cloth)
4. They also used gold a lot because it's ....
   (a. rare – b. expensive – c. valuable – d. shiny)

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:
اختر الإجابة الصحيحة: 7

1. Granite is a .... material. It can last forever.
   a) soft b) weak c) durable d) small
2. Don't touch the .... They are very valuable.
   a) parents b) artifacts c) condition d) museums
3. A hot, dry climate helps .... the artifacts for a long time.
   a) preserve b) learn c) build d) like
4. Stone and gold can .... for a long time.
   a) help b) last c) learn d) build
5. A: What were the pots made from? B: They were made from ....
   a) glass b) clay c) gold d) stone
6. When you cover artifacts in gold, you keep them in good ....
   a) shape b) size c) condition d) material
7. There are many artifacts in the .... of Ancient History.
   a) stone b) Pyramid c) School d) Museum

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:
اقرأ وأكمل النص باستخدام الكلمات المساعدة: 4

museum – materials – granite – valuable – clay

Egyptian artifacts are amazing because they lasted for a long time. People in Ancient Egypt used certain ....(1)............ that were hard and durable. They used ....(2)............ to build the Pyramids. They also used glass, which could last forever. They used ....(3)............ which is found near the river to make pots. Ancient Egyptians liked to use gold because it is durable and ....(4)............ .

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة: 5

People say that there is a lot of gold in Tutankhamun's tomb. It's true! Ancient Egyptians liked to use gold because it is valuable, but it's also durable. When they covered their artifacts with gold, they kept them in good condition. Ancient Egyptians also knew that certain materials could last a long time. That's why they used granite to build the Pyramids because it's a very hard and durable stone. They used a lot of glass, which lasts forever. They also used clay which is found close to the River Nile, to make their pots.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 The general idea of the text is about .... in Ancient Egypt.
a) food b) artifacts c) tombs d) homes

2 .... were built with granite.
a) Pots b) The Pyramids c) Tutankhamun's tomb d) Artifacts

3 The underlined word "valuable" means ....
a) cheep b) precious c) weak d) small

B Answer the following questions:

4 Why did the Ancient Egyptians like to use gold?

....

5 Where could the Ancient Egyptians find clay?

....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: ضع الكلمات فى ترتيبها الصحيح لتكون جملًا: 5

1 do – Why – have – we – artifacts – many?

....

2 excited – They're – about – to learn – Egypt – Ancient.

....

3 like – What – to – you – would – know?

....

4 in Egypt – We – have – climate – a hot, – dry.

....

5 built – Ancient – with – the Pyramids – granite – Egyptians.

....



6 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى: 1

Mr tarek is our guide today

....



Lesson 2







They loved animals

لقد أحبوا الحيوانات

Listen, point, and say: استمع، أشر وقل:

Main Vocabulary



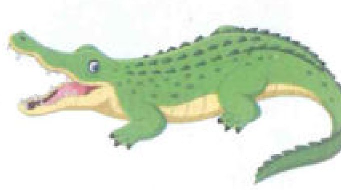
rat
جرذ



monkey
قرد



baboon
قرد الرباح (البابون)



crocodile
تمساح



hippo
فرس النهر



falcon
صقر



ibis
طائر أبو منجل



snake
ثعبان

Extra vocabulary

pets	حيوانات أليفة	pests	الآفات	farmers	مزارعون
grain	حبوب	lions	أسود	dangerous (adj.)	خطير
especially	خاصة	wisdom	حكمة	Saqqara	سقارة
alone	بمفردها	afterlife	الحياة الأخرى	common (adj.)	شائع
statues	تماثيل	tombs	مقابر	popular (adj.)	مشهور
turtles	سلاحف بحرية	tricks	خدع	local (adj.)	محلي
university	الجامعة	hiking	التنزه على الأقدام	mice	فئران

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعـــال منتظمـة

Present		Past	Present		Past
adore	يعشق/ يحب بشدة	adored	love	يحب	loved
believe	يعتقد	believed	clean	ينظف	cleaned
produce	ينتج	produced	need	يحتاج	needed
kill	يقتل	killed	represent	يمثل	represented
mummify	يحنط	mummified	include	يشمل	included

Expressions and Phrases

look after them	يعتنى بهم	keep them safe	يبقيهم آمنين
keep the house free of	يبقى المنزل خاليًا من	difficult to look after	من الصعب الاعتناء بهم

Definitions

grain	حبوب	seeds from plants used to make flour and bread بذور من النباتات تستخدم في صنع الدقيق والخبز
adored	عشق	loved something very much أحب شيئًا إلى حد كبير
wisdom	حكمة	using your knowledge to make good decisions استخدام معرفتك لاتخاذ قرارات جيدة
mummify	يحنط	to cover in oils and cloth to preserve for a very long time أن تغطى شيئًا بزيت وقماش للحفاظ عليه لفترة طويلة جدًا
statue	تمثال	an object made of stone or another material to look like a person or animal شيء مصنوع من الحجر أو مادة أخرى ليبدو مثل شخص أو حيوان

Vocabulary Check

- We use a comma (,) when we speak about more than one thing:

نستخدم الفاصلة عند التحدث عن أكثر من شي واحد.

e.g. Some people kept crocodiles, hippos, and lions.

Important sentences جمل هامة

- Ancient Egyptians loved animals and kept many as pets.

- كان المصريون القدماء يحبون الحيوانات ويحتفظون بالعديد منها كحيوانات أليفة.

- Ancient Egyptians believed that cats can look after them.

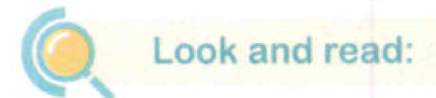
- اعتقد المصريون القدماء أن القطط يمكنها الاعتناء بهم.

- Ancient Egyptians kept many animals, like crocodiles, lions, and hippos.

- احتفظ المصريون القدماء بالعديد من الحيوانات مثل التماسيح والأسود وفرس النهر.

- Ancient Egyptians loved birds, too, especially falcons and the ibis, which represented wisdom in Ancient Egypt.

- أحب المصريون القدماء الطيور أيضًا، خاصة الصقور وطائر أبو منجل الذى يمثل الحكمة فى مصر القديمة.



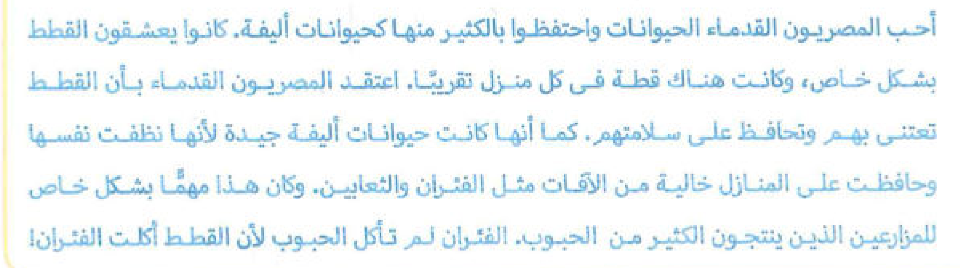
Look and read: انظر واقرأ:

1. What was the Ancient Egyptians' favorite animal?

ماذا كان الحيوان الأليف المفضل لدى القدماء المصريين؟



The Ancient Egyptians loved animals and kept many as pets. They particularly [(1)] adored cats, and there was a cat in almost every house. The Ancient Egyptians believed that cats looked after them and kept them safe. They were also good pets because they cleaned themselves [(2)] and kept the houses free of pests like rats and snakes. This was particularly important [(3)] for farmers, who produced a lot of grain. The mice didn't eat the grain because the cats ate the rats!



أحب المصريون القدماء الحيوانات واحتفظوا بالكثير منها كحيوانات أليفة. كانوا يعشقون القطط بشكل خاص، وكانت هناك قطة فى كل منزل تقريبًا. اعتقد المصريون القدماء بأن القطط تعتنى بهم وتحافظ على سلامتهم. كما أنها كانت حيوانات أليفة جيدة لأنها نظفت نفسها وحافظت على المنازل خالية من الآفات مثل الفئران والثعابين. وكان هذا مهمًا بشكل خاص للمزارعين الذين ينتجون الكثير من الحبوب. الفئران لم تأكل الحبوب لأن القطط أكلت الفئران!

(1)	خاصة
(2)	أنفسهم
(3)	هام

2. What other animals did the Ancient Egyptians keep?

ما الحيوانات الأخرى التى احتفظ بها القدماء المصريون؟



As well as [(4)] cats, many people kept monkeys and baboons. Some people even kept crocodiles, hippos, and lions, which were dangerous and difficult to look after. They weren't popular pets!

بالإضافة إلى القطط، احتفظ العديد من الناس بالقرود وقرود الرباح (البابون)، حتى إن بعض الناس احتفظوا بالتماسيح وفرس النهر والأسود، التى كانت خطرة ويصعب الاعتناء بها. لم تكن حيوانات أليفة شعبية!

(4)	بالإضافة إلى

3. Did the Ancient Egyptians keep birds as pets as well?

هل احتفظ المصريون القدماء بالطيور كحيوانات أليفة أيضًا؟

Yes, they did. The Ancient Egyptians loved birds too, especially falcons and the ibis, which represented wisdom. There are thousands of mummified ibises in Saqqara alone. All these pets weren't only important for the Ancient Egyptians' everyday life(5) – they were also important in the afterlife. It is therefore(6) common to find mummified(7) pets and statues of animals in the tombs.

نعم، لقد فعلوا ذلك. كان المصريون القدماء يحبون الطيور أيضًا، وخاصة الصقور وكذلك طيور أبو منجل التى تمثل الحكمة. يوجد الآلاف من المومياوات المحنطة لطيور أبو منجل فى سقارة وحدها. كل هذه الحيوانات الأليفة لم تكن مهمة فقط للحياة اليومية للمصريين القدماء - كانوا أيضًا مهمين فى الحياة الآخرة. لذلك من الشائع العثور على مومياوات حيوانات أليفة وتماثيل حيوانات فى المقابر.



(5) الحياة اليومية
(6) لذلك
(7) محنطة

4. What animals are popular pets in Egypt today?

ما الحيوانات الأليفة الأخرى المشهورة فى مصر الآن؟

Today, cats are still popular pets in Egypt. Other animals that people keep today include, turtles, fish, and birds, which are of course(8) much smaller and easier(9) to look after than baboons and crocodiles.

لا تزال القطط اليوم حيوانات أليفة شهيرة فى مصر. وتشمل الحيوانات الأخرى التى يحتفظ بها الناس اليوم السلاحف والأسماك والطيور، والتى هى بالطبع أصغر بكثير وأسهل فى الاعتناء بها من قرود الرباح (البابون) والتماسيح.



(8) بالطبع
(9) أصغر وأسهل

Check point

1 Why were cats so popular in Ancient Egypt?

....

2 What is the bird that represented wisdom in Ancient Egypt?

....



B Language Focus

The Past Simple Tense زمن الماضى البسيط

We use the past simple tense to express an action that happened and ended in the past at a certain time.

يستخدم زمن الماضى البسيط للتعبير عن فعل حدث وانتهى فى الماضى فى وقت معين.

يتكون الفعل فى الماضى بإضافه (ed /d/ied):

1. Regular Verbs
أفعال منتظمة

- معظم الأفعال يضاف لها (ed): talk → talked
- الأفعال المنتهية بـ (e) يضاف لها (d): adore → adored
- الأفعال المنتهية بـ (y) قبلها حرف ساكن نحذف الـ (y) ويضاف إليها الـ (ied). mummify → mummified
- الأفعال المنتهية بحرف مسبوق بـ (a - e - i - o - u) + حرف ساكن يضاف لها (ed) مع مضاعفة الحرف الساكن. drop → dropped

e.g. Ancient Egyptians loved animals.

2. Irregular Verbs
أفعال غير منتظمة

الأفعال غير المنتظمة لا تتبع قاعدة عند تحويلها للماضى البسيط وتحفظ كما هى، على سبيل المثال:

Present	Past	Present	Past
be (am - is - are)	was / were	keep	kept
come	came	teach	taught
become	became	grow	grew
go	went	have	had
do	did		

e.g. Ancient Egyptians kept monkeys and baboons.

Affirmative Form: صيغه الإثبات:

Subject (الفاعل) + التصريف الثانى للفعل + تكملة الجملة.

e.g. Sama traveled to London last year.

Negative Form: صيغه النفى:

فى حالة النفى نستخدم:

Subject (الفاعل) + didn't + (inf.) الفعل فى المصدر + تكملة الجملة.

e.g. People in the past didn't have cars.

e.g. I didn't go to the beach last summer.

Yes/No question: السؤال بـ (هل)

فى حالة السؤال بـ «هل» فى الماضى، نستخدم:

Question السؤال

A: Did + subject (الفاعل) + (inf.) الفعل فى المصدر + تكملة السؤال ?

e.g. A: Did Laila play basketball?

للإجابة نستخدم:

Answer الإجابة

B: Yes, / B: No,	subject (الفاعل)	did. / didn't.

e.g. B: Yes, she did. or No, she didn't.

e.g. A: Did you do your homework? Or B: Yes, I did. / B: No, I didn't.

Wh- question: السؤال باستخدام كلمة الاستفهام

A: Question word (كلمة الاستفهام) + did + subject (الفاعل) (inf.) الفعل فى المصدر...?

B: Subject + التصريف الثانى للفعل + تكملة الجملة.

e.g. A: Where did you go yesterday? B: I went to the club.

e.g. A: What did Talia do last night?
B: She watched TV, then she went to bed.

Key words: الكلمات الدالة

yesterday	last	ago	in the past
أمس	الماضى	منذ	فى الماضى

e.g. Hana went to the zoo yesterday.

e.g. I visited my grandparents last week.

e.g. Hossam and Ali met each other an hour ago.

e.g. We lived in a village in the past.

Verb to "be" in the past simple فعل «يكون» فى زمن الماضى البسيط

Affirmative Form: الصيغه المثبتة:

I/ He/ She/ It/ فاعل مفرد	was + تكملة الجملة.

We/ They/ You/ فاعل جمع	were + تكملة الجملة.

- Habiba was abroad last week.
- Cats were important pets in Ancient Egypt.

Negative Form: الصيغه المنفية:

I/ He She/ It/ فاعل مفرد	was not (wasn't) + تكملة الجملة.

We/ They You/ فاعل جمع	were not (weren't) + تكملة الجملة.

- There wasn't a statue in the temple.
- They weren't at school yesterday.

Yes/No question: السؤال باستخدام "هل":

Question: السؤال

Was	I/ he/ she/ it/ فاعل مفرد ....?
Were	we/ they/ you/ فاعل جمع ....?

Answer: الإجابة

Yes,	subject (الفاعل)	was/were.
No,		wasn't/weren't.

Karma: Was Hossam at the museum yesterday?
Amal : No, he wasn't.

Ali : Were there a lot of artifacts in the museum?
Omar : Yes, there were.

Check point

Choose the correct answer: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. I (go – goes – going – went) to Luxor on my vacation last week.
2. Heba (isn't – wasn't – didn't – aren't) at school yesterday.
3. Where (are – were – did – do) you two hours ago?
4. The ibis (represented – representing – represents – represent) wisdom in Ancient Egypt.
5. (Do – Does – Doing – Did) they arrive late yesterday?
6. Cars (are – do – were – was) loud in the past.
7. (Was – Are – Is – Were) there any kids in the playground yesterday?
8. We (don't – doesn't – didn't – weren't) visit Grandpa last vacation.





• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة: 10

1 Ancient Egyptians believed that .... can look after them.
a) baboons b) hippos c) cats d) snakes

2 Farmers in Ancient Egypt produced a lot of ....
a) pets b) grain c) gold d) iron

3 The .... is a bird that represented wisdom in Ancient Egypt.
a) flacon b) chicken c) ibis d) parrot

4 Salwa .... cats. She loves them very much.
a) kills b) hates c) adores d) represents

5 Some people kept .... as pets. They were dangerous to look after.
a) lions b) cats c) fish d) birds

6 .... there a lot of mummies in the museum?
a) Is b) Was c) Are d) Were

7 I .... travel last month. I stayed home.
a) don't b) didn't c) doesn't d) won't

8 He .... to get some information about the museum yesterday.
a) needs b) needing c) needed d) need

9 We .... a wonderful guide during our last visit.
a) met b) meets c) meeting d) meet

10 They didn't .... the animals yesterday.
a) fed b) feed c) feeding d) feeds

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:
اقرأ وأكمل النص باستخدام الكلمات المساعدة: 4

falcons – lions – easier – afterlife – tombs

Ancient Egyptians loved animals and kept them as pets. They kept animals, like hippos, monkeys, baboons, and even ....(1)............ which were difficult to look after. They also loved birds, especially ....(2)............ and the ibis, which represented wisdom in Ancient Egypt. Pets weren't only important in the Ancient Egyptians' daily life; they were also important in the ....(3)............ . That's why there are many mummified pets in Ancient ....(4)............ .

3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:
ضع الكلمات فى ترتيبها الصحيح لتكون جملًا: 6

1 kept – Ancient – animals – many – Egyptians – as pets.

....

2 came – They – early – home – night – last.

....

3 there – Were – in the – mummified – birds – museum?

....

4 in the – There – wasn't – traffic – past – any.

....

5 did – you – Where – up – grow?

....

6 represented – ibis – The – wisdom – in Ancient – Egypt.

....

4 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات بين الأقواس:

10

1 The Ancient Egyptians (love) .... their pets. SB

2 We (not) .... like cats when we were young.

3 Omar didn't (traveled) .... to Paris last vacation.

4 The tombs (be) .... full of golden artifacts.

5 (Be) .... there snakes in Ancient Egypt?

6 Mrs Hoda (teach) .... me English when I was in the third grade.

7 I (go) .... to the Grand Museum and saw many mummies.

8 (Do) .... the kids arrive in time yesterday?

9 They (teach) .... their monkeys different tricks. SB

10 They (not try) .... to solve the problem in our last meeting.

5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

1

Today, pets are still popular in egypt

....

6 Write a text of about FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة من 50 كلمة باستخدام العناصر الآتية:

5

"Cats in Ancient Egypt"

keep them safe – afterlife

....

....

....

....

Study



Lesson 3

Metal in Ancient Egypt

المعادن فى مصر القديمة

Watch a video

A Trade in Ancient Egypt

التجارة فى مصر القديمة



Listen and say: استمع وقل:

Main vocabulary

presentation	عرض تقديمى	Ancient Egyptians	القدماء المصريون	metal	معدن
trading	التجارة	weapons	أسلحة	economy	الاقتصاد

Extra vocabulary

countries	دول	kinds	أنواع	interesting (adj.)	مثير للاهتمام
rocks	صخور	harder (adj.)	أقوى من	stone	حجارة
different (adj.)	مختلف	shapes	أشكال	fascinating (adj.)	مذهل
gold	ذهب	popular (adj.)	مشهور	jewelry	مجوهرات
decorations	ديكورات	art	فن	culture	ثقافة
craftsmen	حرفيون	statues	تماثيل	sculptures	منحوتات
silver	فضة	artifacts	تحف فنية	true (adj.)	حقيقى

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعـــال منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
trade	يتاجر	traded	heat	يسخن	heated
melt	يذيب	melted	hunt	يصطاد	hunted
help	يساعد	helped	develop	يطور	developed

Irregular verbs أفعـــال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
buy	يشترى	bought	sell	يبيع	sold
tell	يخبر	told	find	يجد	found
make	يصنع	made	grow	يزرع	grew

Expressions and Phrases

take out the metal parts	يستخرج الأجزاء المعدنية	make shapes with it	يصنع منها أشكالًا
on the land	على الأرض	more easily	أكثر سهولة
first found	وجد لأول مرة	use (something) for	يستخدم شيئًا ما في ...
That's right	هذا صحيح	got through	حصل عليها من خلال

Definitions

trade	تجارة	buying and selling things between countries بيع وشراء الأشياء بين الدول
metal	معدن	something, like gold or iron, that is hard and strong شيء صلب وقوي، مثل الذهب أو الحديد
weapon	سلاح	an object used for fighting or hunting animals غرض يستخدم لمحاربة الحيوانات أو صيدها
economy	اقتصاد	the system of how a country's money and goods are produced and used النظام المتبع في إنتاج واستخدام أموال الدولة وسلعها

Important sentences جمل هامة

- Ancient Egyptians bought and sold many things to other countries.
- اشترى المصريون القدماء وباعوا أشياء كثيرة لدول أخرى.
- Ancient Egyptians first found metal 7000 years ago in rocks.
- وجد المصريون القدماء المعدن لأول مرة منذ ٧٠٠٠ عام في الصخور.
- They used the metal to make tools and weapons.
- استخدم القدماء المصريون المعدن في صنع الأدوات والأسلحة.
- Ancient Egypt was one of the strongest economies in the world.
- كانت مصر القديمة من أقوى الاقتصادات.

Check point

Choose the correct answer: **اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:**

1. Ancient Egyptians made (metal – weapons – stone – rocks) that they used to hunt on land.
2. People buy and sell many things. This is called (weapons – art – culture – trading).
3. Dalia has a classroom (economy – presentation – trading – metal) about Ancient Egyptians.
4. People in Ancient Egypt used (cloth – silver – gold – metal) to make tools and weapons.
5. Ancient Egyptians had a strong (economy – presentation – gold – rock).





Listen, read, and role-play:

استمع، اقرأ وتبادل الأدوار:



Injy

Our class presentation is about trade in Ancient Egypt. I'm Injy, and this is Dalia. The Ancient Egyptians bought from and sold many things to different countries. This is called trading, Dalia, can you tell us what kinds of things the Ancient Egyptians traded?

عرضنا التقديمي يدور حول التجارة في مصر القديمة. أنا إنجي، وهذه داليا. اشترى المصريون القدماء من بلدان مختلفة وباعوا أشياء كثيرة. وهذا ما يسمى التجارة، داليا، هل يمكنك أن تخبرينا ما هي أنواع الأشياء التي تاجر بها المصريون القدماء؟



Dalia

Thanks, Injy. Well, one of the most interesting things they traded with other countries was metal! The Ancient Egyptians first found metal in rocks around 7,000 years ago. They heated the rocks and took out the metal parts. They learned that metal was harder than stone, and that they could melt and make different shapes with it.

شكرا ، إنجي. حسنا ، كان المعدن من أكثر الأشياء التي تاجروا بها مع الدول الأخرى! إثارة للاهتمام وجد المصريون القدماء المعدن لأول مرة في الصخور منذ حوالي ٧٠٠٠ عام. قاموا بتسخين الصخور وإخراج الأجزاء المعدنية. علموا أن المعدن كان أقوى من الحجر، وأنهم كانوا يستطيعون إذابته وصنع أشكال مختلفة معه.



Injy

That's fascinating, Dalia, thank you. What did they use the metal for?

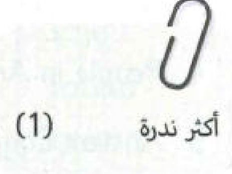
هذا رائع ، داليا ، شكرا لك. فيم استخدموا المعدن؟



Dalia

They used it to make tools and weapons, so that they could hunt on the land, and grow things like food more easily. Gold was a popular metal for making jewelry and decorations. Silver was also used, but it was rarer[1]. As art and culture were very important to the Ancient Egyptians, many of their craftsmen used different types of metal to make statues and sculptures to sell.

استخدموه لصنع الأدوات والأسلحة، حتى يتمكنوا من الصيد على الأرض، وزراعة أشياء مثل الطعام بسهولة أكبر. كان الذهب معدنًا شائعًا لصنع المجوهرات والديكورات. تم استخدام الفضة أيضًا، لكنها كانت نادرة. نظرًا لأن الفن والثقافة كانا مهمين جدًّا للمصريين القدماء، فقد استخدم العديد من الحرفيين أنواعًا مختلفة من المعدن لصنع التماثيل والمنحوتات لبيعها.



(1) أكثر ندرة



Injy

That's right. But they didn't just sell metal to other countries. They also bought some metals. like silver, which they got through trade with countries. And as they traded more, this helped the Ancient Egyptians develop their economy, until Ancient Egypt was one of the strongest (2) economies in the world(3).

(2)	أقوى
(3)	العالم
(4)	متاحف
(5)	أسئلة

هـذا صحيـح. لكنهـم لـم يبيعـوا المعـدن فقـط إلـى دول أخـرى. بـل اشـتروا بعـض المعـادن. مثـل الفضـة، التـى حصلـوا عليهـا من خـلال التجـارة مـع البلدان. ومـع تداولهـم أكثـر، سـاعد هـذا المصرييـن القدمـاء علـى تطويـر اقتصادهـم، حتـى كانـت مصـر القديمـة واحـدة مـن أقـوى الاقتصـادات فـى العالـم.

Dalia



Yes, you only need to look at the Ancient Egyptian artifacts in museums (4) today to see that this is true.

نعم، ما عليك سوى إلقاء نظرة على القطع الأثرية المصرية القديمة فى المتاحف اليوم لترى أن هذا صحيح.



Injy

Well, that's the end of our presentation. Does anyone have any questions (5), please?

حسنًا، هذا هو نهاية العرض التقديمى. هل لدى أى شخص أى أسئلة من فضلكم؟

Check point

1 When did Ancient Egyptians first find metal?

....

2 What did the Ancient Egyptians use the metal for?

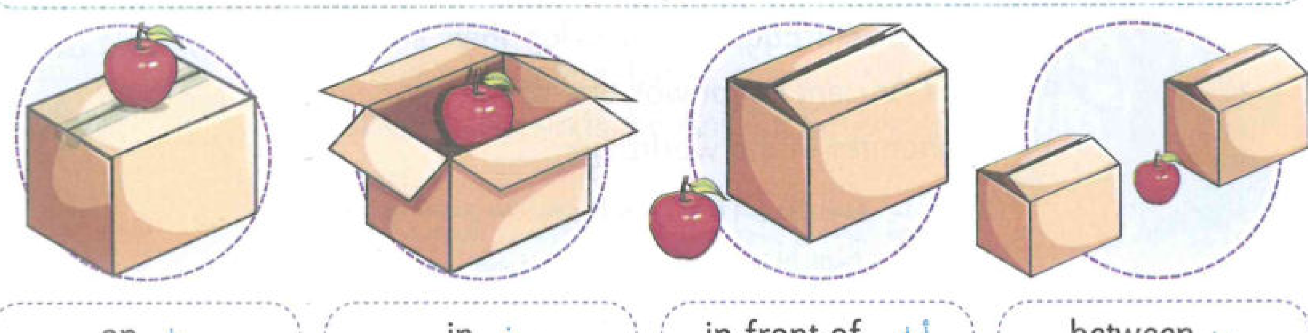
....

Language Focus

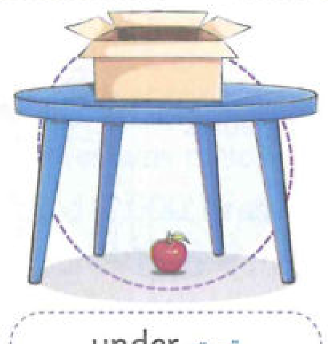
Prepositions of place حروف الجر الخاصة بالمكان

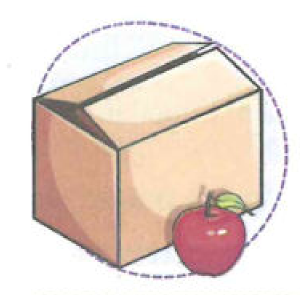
We use prepositions of place to say where things are.

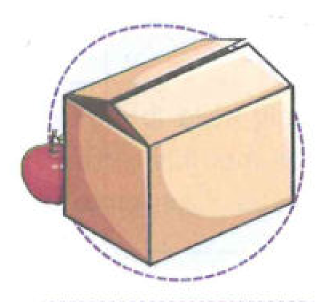
نستخدم حروف الجر الخاصة بالمكان لنذكر أماكن تواجد الأشياء.



on على | in فى | in front of أمام | between بين





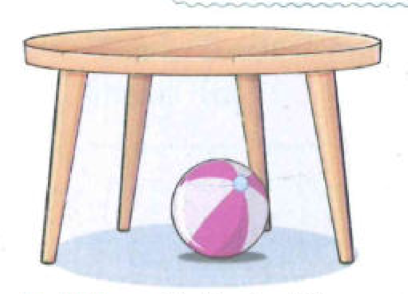


under تحت | next to بجوار | behind خلف

- للسؤال عن أماكن الأشياء، نستخدم:

Where is the + اسم الشىء ?

It's + حرف الجر الخاص بالمكان + اسم شىء آخر.





e.g. A: Where is the ball?

B: It's under the table.

e.g. A: Where is the mouse?

B: It's next to the TV.

One of the most beautiful artifacts from Ancient Egypt is Tutankhamun's mask, which was found in his tomb. The mask is gold, with blue lines between gold lines. Under his chin is a thin beard. There is also a snake on the top of his head.

ومن أجمل القطع الأثرية من مصر القديمة قناع توت عنخ آمون الذى عثر عليه فى مقبرته. القناع ذهبى، مع وجود خطوط زرقاء بين الخطوط الذهبية. وتحت ذقنه لحية رقيقة. يوجد أيضًا ثعبان فى أعلى رأسه.



Story



Listen and say: استمع وقل:

Main vocabulary

king	ملك	golden touch	لمسة ذهبية	daughter	ابنة
rose garden	حديقة ورود	castle	قلعة	tears	دموع

Extra vocabulary

favorite (adj.)	مفضل	ground	أرض	strange-looking (adj.)	غريب المنظر
goat	عنزة	sick (adj.)	مريض	wish	أمنية
warm (adj.)	دافئ	excited (adj.)	متحمس	special meal	وجبة خاصة
precious (adj.)	ثمين	roses	ورود	important	مهم

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعـــال منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
live	يعيش	lived	call	يدعى (يسمى)	called
walk	يمشى	walked	trip	يتعثر	tripped
touch	يلمس	touched	celebrate	يحتفل	celebrated
ask	يطلب (يسأل)	asked	hug	يحتضن	hugged
start	يبدأ	started	save	ينقذ	saved
return	يعود	returned	change	يغير	changed

Irregular verbs أفعـــال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
take	يأخذ	took	give	يعطى	gave
think	يفكر	thought	make	يصنع	made
leave	يغادر	left	eat	يأكل	ate
find	يجد	found	lose	يخسر	lost

Expressions and Phrases

spend time	يقضى الوقت	one night	ذات ليلة
trip over something	يتعثر فى شىء ما	fell much better	يشعر بتحسن
turn into gold	يتحول إلى ذهب	make (someone's) wish come true	يحول أمنية شخص إلى حقيقة
please, come back	من فضلك، عد مجددًا	don't care about	لا يهتم بـ



King Midas and the Golden Touch الملك مايدس واللمسة الذهبية

Look and read: انظر واقرأ:

The Beginning

Many years ago[1], there lived a king called King Midas. He loved three things more than anything else: his daughter, Marigold, his rose garden, and gold. His favorite thing was to spend time in his garden with Marigold. But he also liked to look at[2] all the gold in his castle.

قبل سنوات عديدة، عاش ملك يدعى الملك مايدس. كان يحب ثلاثة أشياء أكثر من أى شىء آخر: ابنته، ماريجولد، حديقة الورد الخاصة به، والذهب. كان الشىء المفضل لديه هو قضاء الوقت فى حديقته مع ماريجولد. لكنه أحب أيضًا أن ينظر إلى كل ذلك الذهب فى قلعته.



(1)	قبل العديد من السنوات
(2)	ينظر إلى
(3)	عطوف / طيب
(4)	يشكر
(5)	دقيقة

One night, he was walking in his garden when he tripped over something on the ground. It was a strange-looking goat. It looked very sick. King Midas was a kind[3] man, so he took the goat into his castle. There, he gave it food and a warm bed. In the morning, the goat felt much better.

فى إحدى الليالى، كان الملك يمشى فى حديقته عندما تعثر على شىء على الأرض، كان ماعزًا غريب المظهر. كان يبدو مريضا جدا. كان الملك مايدس رجلا لطيفا، لذلك أخذ الماعز إلى قلعته. هناك، أعطاه الطعام وسريرًا دافئًا. فى الصباح، شعر الماعز بتحسن.

The Middle

"I would like to thank[4] you, King Midas," said the goat. "What would you like more than anything else in the world?"

King Midas thought for a minute[5], then said, "I would like everything I touch to turn into gold."

"OK," said the goat, and made the king's wish come true.

قال الماعز: «أود أن أشكرك،أيها الملك مايدس». «ما الذى ترغب به أكثر من أى شىء آخر فى العالم؟».

فكر الملك مايدس لمدة دقيقة، ثم قال: «أريد أن يتحول كل ما ألمسه إلى ذهب».

قال الماعز: «حسنا» وجعلت أمنية الملك تتحقق.

King Midas was very excited. After the goat left, he walked around[6] the castle. When he touched a chair, it turned to gold. When he touched his bed, it turned to gold, too. To celebrate, he asked for a special meal. But when he touched the food, he couldn't eat it because it turned to gold. Then, he went outside[7] into the garden to find Marigold. When he hugged her, she also turned to gold!

كان الملك مايدس متحمسا للغاية. بعد مغادرة الماعز، قام بالسير حول القلعة. وعندما لمس كرسيًا، تحول إلى ذهب. وعندما لمس سريره، تحول إلى ذهب أيضًا. للاحتفال، طلب وجبة خاصة. ولكن عندما لمس الطعام، لم يستطع تناوله لأنه تحول إلى الذهب. ثم ذهب إلى الحديقة للعثور على ماريجولد. عندما احتضنها، تحولت أيضًا إلى الذهب!

(6)	يتجول فى أنحاء
(7)	بالخارج
(8)	البكاء

The End

King Midas started crying[8]. "Please come back, goat!" he said. "I can't lose Marigold." His tears fell on his precious roses and they turned to gold. But he didn't care about roses or gold any more—he just wanted to save his daughter.
The goat heard King Midas and returned to change everything back to how it was before. "Thank you so much!" said King Midas. "I will never think gold is so important again!"

بدأ الملك مايدس بالبكاء. وقال: «عُدْ يا ماعز، أرجوك لا يمكنني أن أفقد ماريجولد».
سقطت دموعه على وروده الثمينة وتحولوا إلى الذهب. لكنه لم يهتم بالورود أو الذهب بعد الآن، بل أراد إنقاذ ابنته. سمع الماعز الملك مايدس وعاد لتغيير كل شيء إلى ما كان عليه من قبل.
قال الملك مايدس: «شكرًا جزيلًا! لن أعتقد أبدًا أن الذهب مهم جدًا مرة أخرى!».

Moral! الدرس الأخلاقى!

Your family is more important than money and material things.

عائلتك أهم من المال والأشياء المادية.

Check point

1 What did the king like the most? ....

2 What happened after the goat left? ....

Vocabulary Check

- يمكن أن تُستخدم بعض الكلمات كأفعالًا وأسماء (nouns/ verbs) مثل:

Noun اسم	Verb فعل
touch لمسة The king had a golden touch.	touch يلمس He turned everything he touched into gold.
wish أمنية The goat made the king's wish come true.	wish يتمنى I wish I could win the lottery.
trip رحلة They went on a trip to Luxor.	trip يتعثر The king tripped over a strange-looking goat.

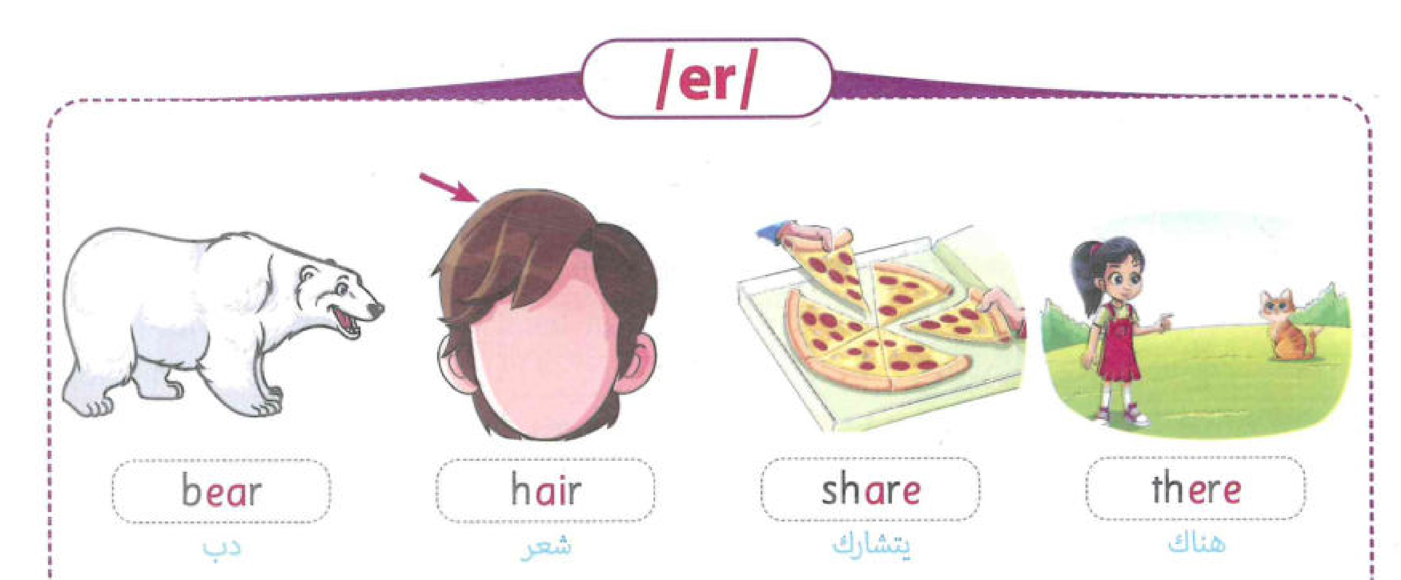


Pronunciation

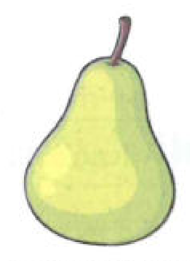


Listen, point, and say: استمع، أشر وقل:

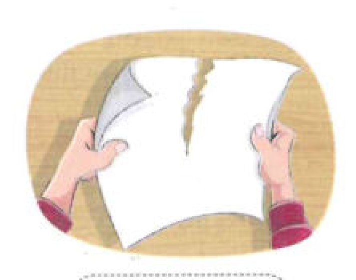
/er/



bear	hair	share	there
دب	شعر	يتشارك	هناك


rare	pear	pair
نادر	كمثرى	زوج من


air	tear	wear
هواء	يمزق	يرتدى



Lesson 3



• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:
استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة: 6

1. The king .... a strange-looking goat one night.
   (a. met – b. hit – c. tripped over – d. came by)
2. The goat looked very ....
   (a. sick – b. fit – c. healthy – d. good)
3. The king took the goat into his .... and helped it.
   (a. house – b. cottage – c. castle – d. garden)
4. Everything the king touched turned into ....
   (a. dust – b. gold – c. wood – d. paper)

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:
اختر الإجابة الصحيحة: 8

1. ".................................... " is when you buy and sell things between countries.
   a) Trip over b) Trade c) Find d) Mine
2. A: .... is the king's mask? B: It's in the museum.
   a) Where b) When c) What d) How
3. .... are objects used for fighting or hunting animals.
   a) Tools b) Metals c) Weapons d) Castles
4. The dog was hiding .... the door and I couldn't see it.
   a) on b) in front of c) in d) behind
5. .... is the system of how the country's money and goods are produced and used.
   a) Fighting b) Hunting c) Trade d) Economy
6. A: Where is my jacket? B: It's .... the closet.
   a) in front b) next c) in d) between
7. The building is .... the school and the shopping mall.
   a) in b) under c) in front d) between
8. Look down, your pen is .... the desk.
   a) between b) under c) in front d) next

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص باستخدام الكلمات المساعدة:

4

materials – between – artifacts – tomb – head

Egypt is famous for having many Ancient artifacts. They are made of different ....(1)............ that lasts for a long time. One of the most beautiful ....(2)............ from Ancient Egypt is Tutankhamun's mask, which was found in his ....(3)............ . The mask is made of gold, with blue lines between gold lines. Under his chin is a thin beard. There is also a snake on the top of his ....(4)............ .

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات فى ترتيبها الصحيح لتكون جملًا:

6

1 saw – They – a snake – the – under – tree.

....

2 is – The teacher – of – the – in front – board.

....

3 is – in – The mask – the – box – glass.

....

4 with – other – Ancient – Egyptians – traded – countries.

....

5 like to – I – would – thank – king – you,.

....

6 could – Where – Egyptians – metal – find – Ancient?

....

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات بين الأقواس:

7

1 A: (When) .... is the castle? B: It's on the green hill.

2 My house is (next) .... of the school.

3 Habiba always puts the pens (in front) .... to the books.

4 The office is (next to) .... the bathroom and the elevator.

5 Would you put the book (in) .... the shelf, please?

6 I can't see him. I think he's (in front of) .... that tree.

7 The keys fell off (on) .... the couch.



6 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:



1

How did the Ancient egyptians make weapons

....







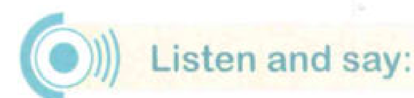
Lessons 4 & 5

A fact file



A Iron in Ancient Egypt

الحديد فى مصر القديمة



Listen and say: استمع وقل:

Main vocabulary

iron	حديد	copper	نحاس	bronze	معدن البرونز
craftsmen	الحرفيون	meteorite	نيزك	scarab amulet	تميمة الجعران (الخنفساء)

Extra vocabulary

early (adj.)	مبكر	famous (adj.)	مشهور	dagger	خنجر
fire	النار	possible (adj.)	معقول	special (adj.)	خاص/ مميز
heaven	الجنة	precious (adj.)	ثمين	rarer (adj.)	أندر (أكثر ندرة)
items	أغراض	jewelry	مجوهرات	agriculture tools	أدوات زراعية
weapons	أسلحة	trade	تجارة	stone	حجر
image	صورة	fortune	حظ	countries	بلدان

Expressions and Phrases

start using	بدأ فى استخدام	difficult to use	من الصعب استخدامه
came from the sky	أتى من السماء	early on	فى بادئ الأمر
easier to find	من السهل إيجاده	around 3,000 years ago	منذ حوالى ٣٠٠٠ عام مضت
this was the result of ...	كان هذا نتيجة لـ ...	use (something) for	استخدم (شيئًا ما) فى
it's made of	مصنوع من	bring good fortune	يجلب الحظ الجيد

Important sentences جمل هامة

- The early iron used by the Ancient Egyptians came from a meteorite.
- الحديد الذى استخدمه القدماء المصريون فى بادئ الأمر جاء من نيزك.
- Ancient Egyptians believed iron came from the sky and called it "the metal of heaven".
- اعتقد القدماء المصريون أن الحديد جاء من السماء ولقبوه بـ«معدن الجنة».
- Early on, the Ancient Egyptians used iron for small items like jewelry.
- فى بادئ الأمر، استخدم القدماء المصريون الحديد فى صناعة الأغراض الصغيرة كالمجوهرات.
- Later on, the Ancient Egyptians could get more iron through trade with other countries.
- لاحقًا، تمكن القدماء المصريون من الحصول على المزيد من الحديد من خلال التجارة مع البلدان الأخرى.



Look and read: انظر واقرأ:

1. When did the Ancient Egyptians start using iron?

متى بدأ المصريون القدماء فى استخدام الحديد؟

The Ancient Egyptians started using iron more than 5,000 years ago. Before[1] iron, they worked with copper and bronze.

بدأ المصريون القدماء باستخدام الحديد منذ أكثر من 5000 عام. قبل الحديد، كانوا يستخدمون النحاس والبرونز.

(1) قبل
(2) من المدهش
(3) نقب عن
(4) يذوب

2. Where did they find iron?

أين وجدوا الحديد؟

Amazingly[2], some of their early iron was from meteorites. Ancient Egyptian craftsmen made a famous dagger for Tutankhamun's tomb from a meteorite. They also mined[3] iron from the ground. But they found it quite difficult to use because it needs a very hot fire to melt[4], which often wasn't possible.

ومن المدهش أن بعض الحديد الذى استخدموه فى بادئ الأمر كان من النيازك. صنع الحرفيون المصريون القدماء خنجرًا مشهورًا لمقبرة توت عنخ آمون من نيزك. كما أنهم قاموا باستخراج الحديد من الأرض. لكنهم وجدوا أنه من الصعب جدا استخدامه لأنه يحتاج إلى نار ساخنة جدا للذوبان، وهو أمر لم يكن ممكنًا فى كثير من الأحيان.

3. Why did they think iron was special?

لماذا اعتقدوا أن الحديد مميز؟

They thought[5] iron was special because they believed it came from the sky (because of the meteorites). They called it "the metal of heaven". For them[6], iron was more precious than gold because it was rarer.

اعتقد المصريون القدماء أن الحديد مميز لأنهم اعتقدوا أنه جاء من السماء (بسبب النيازك). وأطلقوا عليها اسم «معدن الجنة». بالنسبة لهم كان الحديد أغلى من الذهب لأنه كان أكثر ندرة.

(5) اعتقد
(6) بالنسبة لهم
(7) شائع
(8) لاحقًا
(9) دول

4. What did they use iron for?

فيم استخدموا الحديد؟

Early on, the Ancient Egyptians used iron for small items, like jewelry. Copper and bronze were common[7] metals for tools because they were easier to find. But later on[8], iron agricultural tools and weapons began to appear. This was the result of the Ancient Egyptians getting more iron through trade with other countries[9].

فى بادئ الأمر، استخدم المصريون القدماء الحديد للأغراض الصغيرة، مثل المجوهرات. كان النحاس والبرونز من المعادن الشائعة للأدوات لأنها كانت أسهل فى العثور عليها. ولكن فى وقت لاحق، بدأت الأدوات والأسلحة الزراعية الحديدية فى الظهور. وكان ذلك نتيجة حصول المصريين القدماء على المزيد من الحديد من خلال التجارة مع البلدان الأخرى.

How to write a fact file كيفية كتابة ملف حقائق

1 Research facts. You can use books or safe online websites. Make notes under headings like: When ...? Why ...? Where ...? What ...?

- ابحث عن الحقائق. يمكنك استخدام الكتب أو المواقع الإلكترونية الآمنة. قم بتدوين الملاحظات تحت عناوين رئيسية مثل: متى...؟ لماذا...؟ أين...؟ ماذا...؟

2 Use formal language and choose a tense that is appropriate to the topic. When you speak about facts in the past, use the past tense. When you speak about general facts, use present tense.

- استخدم لغة رسمية (الصيغة الكاملة دون اختصارة وعدم استخدام علامات التعجب). واختر زمنًا ملائمًا للموضوع. عندما تتحدث عن حقائق في الماضي قم باستخدام زمن الماضي وعندما تتحدث عن الحقائق بشكل عام قُم باستخدام زمن المضارع.

3 Divide the text into questions and concluded answers.

- قسم النص إلى أسئلة وإجابات مختصرة.

4 Use correct language, punctuation marks, and make sure your spelling is correct.

- استخدم لغة وعلامات ترقيم صحيحة وتأكد من صحة الإملاء.



Look and read: انظر واقرأ:

When did the Ancient Egyptians start using silver? → Ancient Egyptians started using silver from around 4,500 years ago.

Where did they find the silver? → There weren't many silver mines in Egypt, so we think they brought it from other countries through trade.

What did they use silver for? → They used it to make jewelry and mirrors. They also used sheet silver to decorate statues.

Why don't we find many silvers Ancient Egyptian artifacts? → Because silver is not very durable. Sadly, the salts in the tombs destroyed a lot of it, so we cannot see very much of it today.

Scarab Amulet تميمة الجعران
Egypt مصر

e.g. This scarab amulet is from Ancient Egypt and is more than three thousand years old. It is made of copper. People wore jewelry with the image of a scarab to protect them and bring them good fortune.

تميمة الجعران تعود لمصر القديمة وعمرها أكثر من 3,000 عام. مصنوعة من النحاس. ارتدى الناس مجوهرات عليها صورة التميمة لتحميهم وتجلب لهم الحظ الجيد.

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:
استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

8

1. Iron, ..., and bronze are metals that Ancient Egyptians used.
   a) fire b) copper c) grain d) meteorite
2. Early iron that Ancient Egyptians used came from ....
   a) mines b) earth c) meteorites d) the ground
3. It was quite difficult to use iron as it needed very hot .... to melt it.
   a) metal b) meteorite c) craftsmen d) fire
4. Ancient Egyptians called iron "the metal of ....".
   a) heaven b) fire c) earth d) meteorite
5. For Ancient Egyptians, iron was more precious than gold, as it was ....
   a) cheaper b) weaker c) rarer d) deeper
6. Early on, Ancient Egyptians used iron to make small items like ....
   a) chairs b) tables c) jewelry d) grains
7. They believed the stone could bring them good ....
   a) job b) money c) fortune d) friends
8. A scarab amulet is made from ....
   a) stone b) copper c) metal d) gold

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:
اقرأ وأكمل النص باستخدام الكلمات المساعدة:

4

around – Ancient – scarab – precious – fortune

Noha was making a display board about artifacts in Ancient Egypt. She displayed amazing information about ....(1).......... amulet. A scarab amulet is from ....(2).......... . Egypt and is more than three thousand years old. It is made of copper. The stone it was made of is ....(3).......... and durable. People wore jewelry with the image of the scarab to protect them and bring them good ....(4).......... .

3 Read the text and answer the questions:
اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

5

Iron was a special metal in Ancient Egypt. It wasn't only durable, but it was also very rare and valuable. Ancient Egyptians started using iron more than 5,000 years ago. Before it, they worked with copper and bronze. The early iron that Ancient Egyptians used came from a meteorite. That's why Ancient Egyptians called it "the metal of heaven". As it was more precious and rarer than gold, Ancient Egyptians used it to make small items like jewelry. Later on, around 3,000 years ago, iron agricultural tools and weapons began to appear.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 Iron was durable and .... in Ancient Egypt.

a) cheap b) common c) valuable d) inexpensive

2 The early iron came from ....

a) earth b) mountains c) meteorites d) rivers

3 The underlined word "rare" means ....

a) uncommon b) common c) too much d) many

B Answer the following questions:

4 Why did the Ancient Egyptians call iron "the metal of heaven"?

....

5 Summarize the passage in two sentences.

....

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات فى ترتيبها الصحيح لتكون جملًا: 5

1 used – Ancient – copper – bronze – Egyptians – and.

....

2 amulet – A scarab – is – years – old – 3,000.

....

3 use – What – iron – Ancient – Egyptians – for – did?

....

4 amulet – is – made – A scarab – of – copper.

....

5 early – The – iron – a meteorite – came – from.

....

5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى: 1

copper and bronze were common in Ancient Egypt

....

6 Write a text of about FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة من 50 كلمة باستخدام العناصر الآتية: 5

"Scarab amulet"

Where is it from? – What was it made of?

....

....

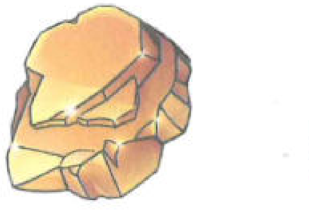
....

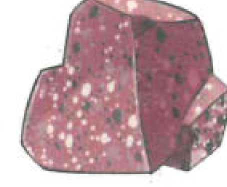
....



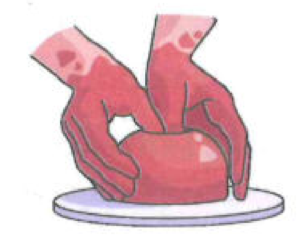

Unit 7 REVIEW

Vocabulary


gold

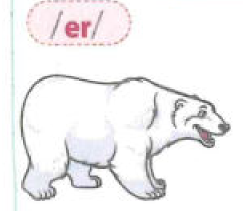

granite


glass

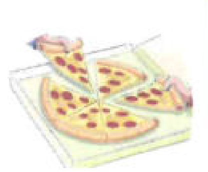

clay

Pronunciation

/er/


bear


hair


share

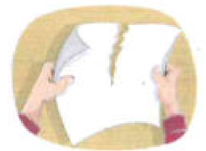

there


rare


pear


pair


air


tear


wear

Language Focus

The Past Simple Tense

Affirmative Form:

Subject + (الفاعل) + التصريف الثاني للفعل + تكملة الجملة.

Regular verbs:



Ancient Egyptians loved animals.

Irregular verbs:



Ancient Egyptians kept monkeys and baboons.

Negative Form:

Subject + didn't + (inf.) الفعل في المصدر + تكملة الجملة.

People in the past didn't have cars.

Yes/No question:

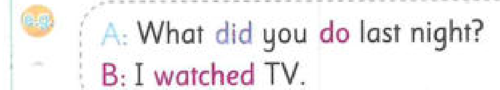
A: Did + subject + (inf.) الفعل في المصدر + تكملة السؤال ?

B: Yes,	subject	did.
B: No,		didn't.

A: Did you do your homework?
B: Yes, I did.

Wh- question:

A: Question word	did	subject	(inf.) الفعل في المصدر ...?
B: Subject (الفاعل)		التصريف الثاني للفعل..... .	



A: What did you do last night?
B: I watched TV.





Lesson 1

تحف فنيه	....	ذهب	....
مناخ	....	طين	....
حجر	....	جرانيت	....
مواد خام	....	زجاج	....
قيم	....	مرشد	....
متين	....	قماش	....

Lesson 2

حيوانات أليفة	....	جرذ	....
فئران	....	قرد	....
الحياة الأخرى	....	قرد الرباح	....
تماثيل	....	تمساح	....
سلاحف	....	فرس النهر	....
حبوب	....	صقر	....
أسود	....	طائر أبو منجل	....
مقابر	....	ثعبان	....
مزارعون	....	حكمة	....

Lesson 3

ابنة	....	تجارة	....
ذهب	....	معدن	....
قلعة	....	سلاح	....
لمسة	....	اقتصاد	....
غريب المنظر	....	ملك	....
أمنية	....	ثمين	....
زوج من	....	دب	....
نادر	....	شعر	....
كمثرى	....	يتشارك	....
هواء	....	دموع	....

Lessons 4 & 5

برونز	....	حديد	....
حرفيون	....	نحاس	....
نيازك	....	خنجر	....
مجوهرات	....	الجنة	....


تأكد من حفظك لكلمات الدروس قبل البدء فى إجابة اختبار الوحدة.

WRITING TIME



How to write about artifacts in Ancient Egypt:

1. We have many artifacts from Ancient Egypt.
2. One reason is + سبب وجود آثار مصرية قديمة.
3. Ancient Egyptians used materials that can last forever.
4. They used + اسم مادة خام + سبب الاستخدام.
5. They also used + اسم مادة خام + سبب الاستخدام.
6. They liked to use gold + سبب الاستخدام.

We have many artifacts from Ancient Egypt. Because of reasons such as climate. We have hot, dry weather that helps preserve the artifacts. Ancient Egyptians used materials that could last forever. They used granite to build the Pyramids. They also used clay to make pots. They liked to use gold because it's durable and valuable.

How to write about pets in Ancient Egypt:

1. Ancient Egyptians loved animals and kept many as pets.
2. They particularly loved cats + السبب
3. They also kept animals like + أسماء حيوانات أليفة.
4. They also loved birds especially + أسماء طيور.
5. The ibis + مكانته فى مصر القديمة.

Ancient Egyptians loved animals and kept many as pets. They particularly loved cats because they believed cats could look after them and keep them safe. They also kept animals like monkeys, hippos, and even lions. Ancient Egyptians loved birds as well, especially falcons and the ibis. The ibis represented wisdom in Ancient Egypt.

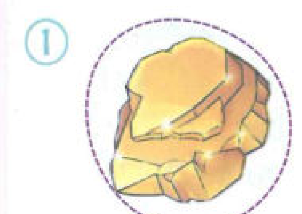
How to write a fact file about an ancient artifact/ object:

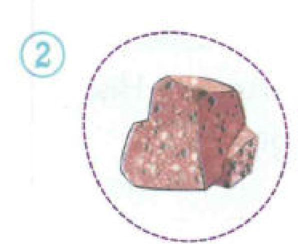
1 What is the artifact/ object that you are writing about and where is it from?	- This is a scarab amulet, and it is from Ancient Egypt.
2 How old is it?	- It's around 3,000 years old.
3 What is it made of?	- A scarab amulet is made from a precious, dark green stone.
4 How did people use it?	- People in Ancient Egypt wore jewelry with the image of a scarab amulet.
5 Why was it important?	- It was important to people in Ancient Egypt because they believed it could protect them and bring them good fortune.

لكى تتمكن من كتابة الموضوعات بشكل مميز، اتبع هذه الخطوات.

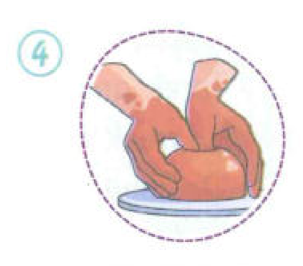
Unit 7 STUDENT'S BOOK CORNER

1 Look and write:

① 
....

② 
....

③ 
....

④ 
....

2 Complete the conversation with the past simple:

Mayar : Hi, Nesma! .... you have a nice weekend?
Nesma : Hi, Mayar! Yes, I .... I went to Al-Azhar Park with my family.
Mayar : What .... you do there?
Nesma : We .... a picnic. Then we went on a boat ride. It ....great!
Mayar : .... you go hiking?
Nesma : No, we didn't. We wanted to, but it started to rain. .... you .... a good weekend?
Mayar : No, I .... I fell over and hurt my arm, so I .... in bed the whole time!

3 Read and match:

1 trade
2 metal
3 weapon
4 economy

a. the system of how a country's money and goods are produced and used
b. something, like gold or iron, that is hard and strong
c. buying and selling things between countries
d. an object used for fghting or hunting animals

4 Complete the text using the prepositions in the box:

between – in – on – Under

One of the most beautiful artifacts from Ancient Egypt is Tutankhamun's mask, which was found ....(1)............ his tomb. The mask is gold, with blue lines ....(2)............ gold lines. ....(3)............ his chin is a thin beard. There is also a snake ....(4)............ the top of his head.





Listening

1 **Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:** 6
استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Tarek and Talia were at the Museum of Ancient History last ....
   (a. week – b. month – c. vacation – d. year)
2. Dr Fayez was their ....
   (a. friend – b. guide – c. cousin – d. uncle)
3. The Pyramids were built with ....
   (a. clay – b. glass – c. granite – d. gold)
4. Ancient Egyptians could find clay by the ....
   (a. farms – b. tombs – c. lake – d. river)

Reading

2 **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:** **اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:** 4

1. Ancient Egyptians used iron .... to hunt animals.
   a) metals b) weapons c) stones d) tools
2. .... is when you use your knowledge to make good decisions.
   a) Economy b) Grain c) Trade d) Wisdom
3. Ancient Egyptians .... pets and mummies to preserve them for a long time.
   a) made b) traded c) mummified d) produced
4. When a metal is very hard, it is called ....
   a) valuable b) useless c) durable d) rare

3 **Read and complete the text with the words in the box:** 4
اقرأ وأكمل النص باستخدام الكلمات المساعدة:

raise – economy – glass – hunt – jewelry

The Ancient Egyptians traded with other countries, and metal was one thing they traded. Metal was harder than ....(1)............ and they could melt it into different shapes. They used metal to make tools and weapons so that they could ....(2)............ animals. Gold and silver were popular metals for making ....(3)............ and art to sell. Trade with other countries helped the Ancient Egyptian ....(4)............ to grow.

4 **Read the text and answer the questions:** **اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:** 5

Omar is a student in grade six. He adores reading, especially short stories that he can find at the school's library. His favorite story is "King Midas and the Golden Touch". It's about a king who loves his daughter, his garden, and gold more than anything else in the world. One night, the king helped a sick goat that

looked very sick. To thank him, it made his wish come true. The king could turn everything he touched into gold. Omar learned from the story that the people we love are more precious than gold.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Omar adores ....
   a) swimming b) running c) reading d) hunting
2. The king loved his .... and his garden so much.
   a) castle b) daughter c) son d) cousin
3. The underlined verb "come true" means ....
   a) travel b) happen c) go d) need

B Answer the following questions:

4. Where can Omar find the short stories?

....

5. What did Omar learn from the story?

....

Writing

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:
ضع الكلمات فى الترتيب الصحيح لتكون جملاً: 3

1. did – How – materials – use – Ancient – Egyptians – the?

....

2. is – between – The book – and – the desk – the bench.

....

3. in good – The climate – the tomb – kept – condition.

....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:
اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات بين الأقواس: 2

1. Ancient Egyptians (know) .... that gold is durable.
2. When (do) .... she last visit her grandparents?

7 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى: 1

I'm tarek and this is dalia. ....

8 Write a text of about FIFTY(50) words using the following guiding elements:
اكتب فقرة من 50 كلمة باستخدام العناصر الآتية: 5

"Iron in Ancient Egypt"

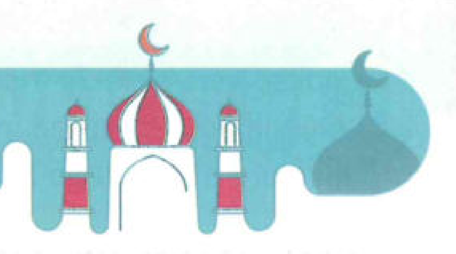
Why was iron special? How did Ancient Egyptians use it?

....
....
....
....

Assess your progress ★★★★★

< 50%	50 : 64%	65 : 84%	85 : 100%
Study again	Practice more	Solve more exams	Well done!





Unit 7 AL-AZHAR CORNER

1 Read and complete the dialog: اقرأ وأكمل المحادثة:

statues – Did – great – went – do

Nour: Hi, Heba. .... you have a nice weekend?
Heba: Hi, Nour! Yes, I .... to the Egyptian Museum.
Nour: What did you .... there?
Heba: I saw a lot of beautiful ....
Nour: Wow, it's ....

2 Choose the correct answer: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. (Trade – Economy – Metal) is something hard like gold and iron.
2. The cat is (in – on – between) the couch and the closet.
3. We use (museums – materials – pets) to make different things.
4. Nadia (visit – visited – visiting) the Museum of Ancient History last week.
5. The (statue – iron – metal) was amazing. It looked exactly like the king.
6. What did you (study – studying – studied) yesterday?
7. Hani (doesn't – don't – didn't) go hiking last week.
8. A: (What – Where – When) is the school? B: It's behind my house.
9. A (metal – weapon – glass) is an object used for fighting or hunting animals.
10. The Ancient Egyptians used (gold – silver – clay) to make pots.

3 Reorder the words to make correct sentences: أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكون جملًا صحيحة:

1. liked to – Ancient – Egyptians – gold – use.

   ....

2. did – When – start – iron – Ancient – Egyptians – using?

   ....

3. preserve – The dry – the – climate – helped – artifacts.

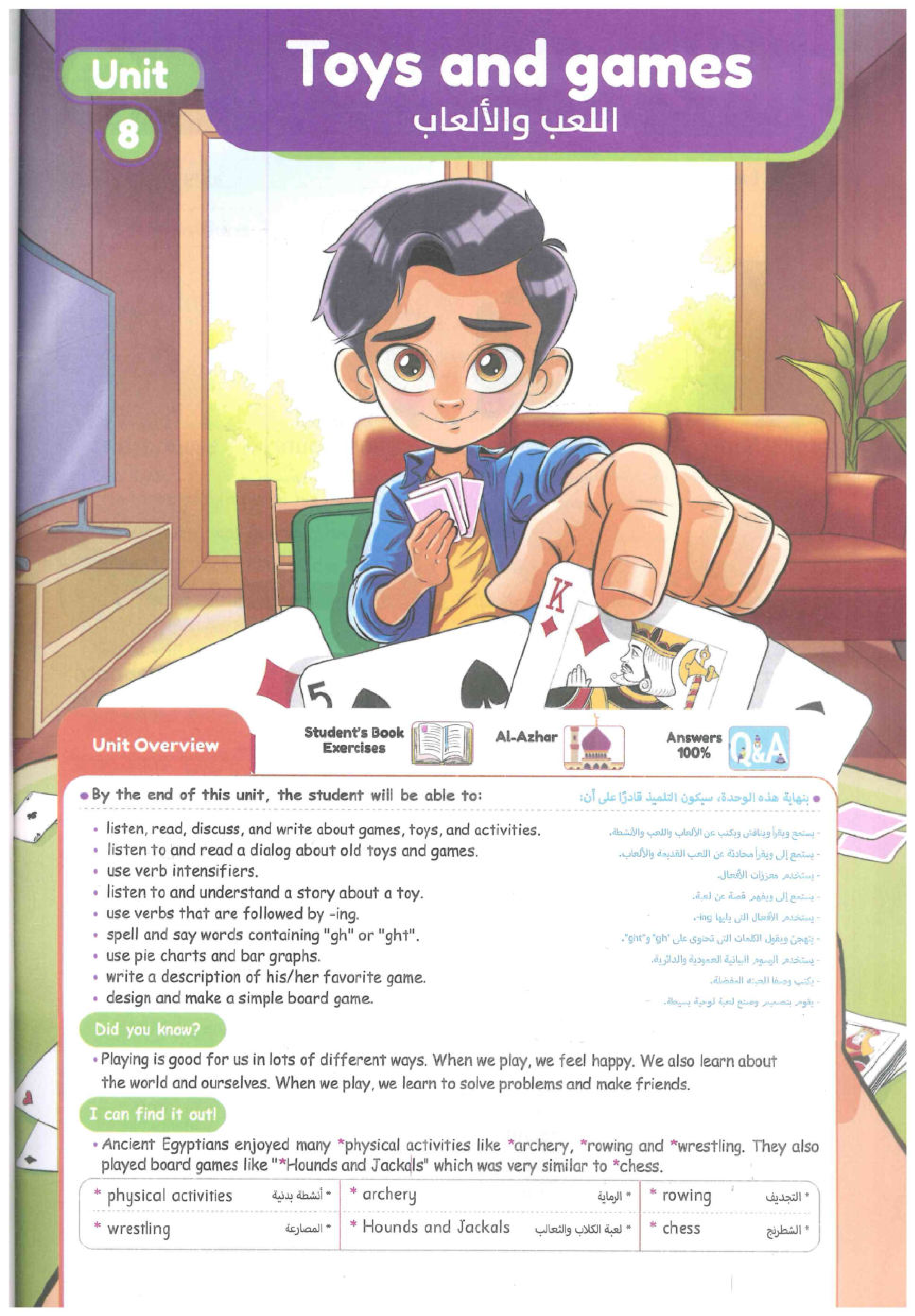
   ....

4. last – Where – you – did – go – weekend?

   ....

5. didn't – He – meet – at the – yesterday – anyone – party.

   ....



Unit 8 Toys and games

اللعب والألعاب

Unit Overview

Student's Book Exercises | Al-Azhar | Answers 100%

- By the end of this unit, the student will be able to:
  - listen, read, discuss, and write about games, toys, and activities.
  - listen to and read a dialog about old toys and games.
  - use verb intensifiers.
  - listen to and understand a story about a toy.
  - use verbs that are followed by -ing.
  - spell and say words containing "gh" or "ght".
  - use pie charts and bar graphs.
  - write a description of his/her favorite game.
  - design and make a simple board game.

- بنهاية هذه الوحدة، سيكون التلميذ قادرًا على أن:
  - يستمع ويقرأ ويناقش ويكتب عن الألعاب واللعب والأنشطة.
  - يستمع إلى ويقرأ محادثة عن اللعب القديمة والألعاب.
  - يستخدم معززات الأفعال.
  - يستمع إلى ويفهم قصة عن لعبة.
  - يستخدم الأفعال التي يليها ing-.
  - يتهجى ويقول الكلمات التي تحتوي على "gh" و"ght".
  - يستخدم الرسوم البيانية العمودية والدائرية.
  - يكتب وصفًا للعبته المفضلة.
  - يقوم بتصميم وصنع لعبة لوحية بسيطة.

Did you know?

- Playing is good for us in lots of different ways. When we play, we feel happy. We also learn about the world and ourselves. When we play, we learn to solve problems and make friends.

I can find it out!

- Ancient Egyptians enjoyed many *physical activities like *archery, *rowing and *wrestling. They also played board games like "*Hounds and Jackals" which was very similar to *chess.

* physical activities	* أنشطة بدنية	* archery	* الرماية	* rowing	* التجديف
* wrestling	* المصارعة	* Hounds and Jackals	* لعبة الكلاب والثعالب	* chess	* الشطرنج



Lesson 1
A Box of Toys
صندوق الألعاب

Watch a video

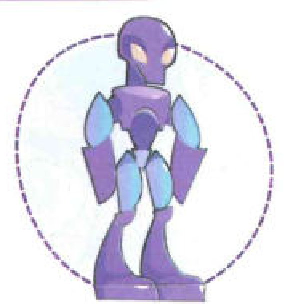


Listen, point, and say: استمع، أشر وقل:

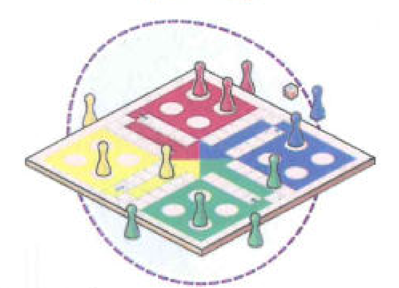
Main vocabulary


doll's house
بيت الدمية

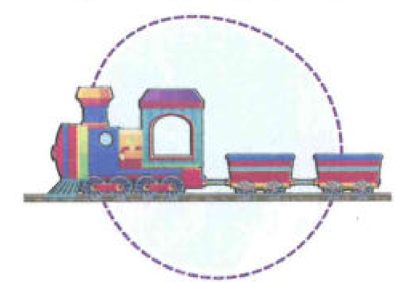

rollerblades
عجلات تزلج

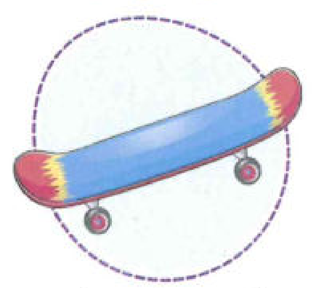

action figure
مجسم على شكل شخصية


marbles
كرات الرخام


board game
لعبة لوحية


cuddly toy
دمية عناق


train set
لعبة القطار


skateboard
لوح تزلج

Extra vocabulary

actually	في الواقع	younger (adj.)	أصغر سنا	favorite (adj.)	مفضل
though	على الرغم من ذلك	brilliant (adj.)	عبقري	fast (adj.)	سريع
cool (adj.)	رائع	older (adj.)	أكبر سنًّا	successful (adj.)	ناجح

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعـــال منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
visit	يزور	visited	love	يحب	loved
play	يلعب	played	want	يريد	wanted
look for	يبحث عن	looked for	try	يجرب	tried
invent	يخترع	invented			

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
find	يجد	found	make up	يؤلف	made up
have	يمتلك	had	know	يعرف	knew
beat	يهزم	beat	think	يعتقد	thought

Expressions and Phrases

on the weekend	فى عطلة نهاية الأسبوع	have a go on ...	يجرب
after a while	بعد فترة قصيرة	very often	كثيرًا جدًا
so do I	وأنا كذلك	I'd love to ...	أود أن ...

Definitions

beat	يهزم	be more successful than someone in a game أن تكون أكثر نجاحًا من شخص ما فى لعبة
have a go	يجرب	try something يجرب شيئًا ما
made up	ألف/اخترع	thought of or invented فكر فى أو اخترع شيئًا

Important sentences جمل هامة

- Yaseen found a box of his old toys at his grandma's house.
  - لقد وجد ياسين صندوق ألعابه القديم فى منزل جدته.
- He loved playing with his old action figures. - أحب ياسين اللعب بمجسمات الشخصيات الخاصة به.
- When Adam was younger, his favorite toy was a train set. - عندما كان آدم صغيرًا، كان القطار لعبته المفضلة.
- Fares didn't have rollerblades, but he had a skateboard. - فارس لم يكن لديه عجلات تزلج، ولكن كان لديه لوح تزلج.
- Fares played board games with his older brother, but he usually beat Fares.
  - كان فارس يلعب الألعاب اللوحية مع أخيه الأكبر ولكنه كان عادة يهزم فارس.
- Fares will look for some of his old toys later. - فارس سوف يبحث عن بعضًا من ألعابه القديمة لاحقًا.

Vocabulary Check

Brilliant! – Cool! – so do I!

لاحظ الفرق بين استخدامات الفعل "love".

love + (inf.) + ing

e.g. I love playing with my toys.

I'd love to + (inf.)

e.g. I'd love to see my cuddly toy.

لاحظ أن بعض الكلمات التى تعبر عن الدهشة والمفاجأة نضع بعدها علامة التعجب.



Check point

Choose the correct answer:

1 Hani could go fast with his (action figure – train set – marbles – skateboard).

2 When you (make up – look for – beat – think) something, you invent it.

3 Sally feels comfortable when she hugs her (board game – marbles – cuddly toy – train).

4 My dad bought me a/an (doll's house – action figure – train set – rollerblades) that looks like superman.

5 I wanted to have a go on my (marbles – board game – train set – rollerblades), but they were small.

6 Mom (makes – looks – beats – visits) me in every game. She's more successful than me.





Listen, read, and role-play: استمع، اقرأ وتبادل الأدوار:

Fares
Did you visit your grandma on the weekend, Yaseen?
هل زرت جدتك فى عطلة نهاية الأسبوع، يا ياسين؟



Yaseen
Yes, I did. I found a box of my old toys at her house, actually.
نعم، لقد فعلت. وجدت صندوقا من ألعابى القديمة فى منزلها، فى الواقع.

Adam
What did you find in there?
ماذا وجدت هناك؟



Yaseen
There was an action figure. I loved playing with it!
كان هناك مجسم شخصية. أحببت اللعب به!

Fares
I loved playing with my old action figures, too! I made up lots of games for them.
أحببت اللعب بمجسمات الشخصيات القديمة الخاصة بى، أيضًا! لقد قمت باختراع الكثير من الألعاب.



Adam
When I was younger, my favorite toy was a train set.
عندما كنت أصغر سنا، كانت لعبتى المفضلة القطار.

Yaseen
I didn't have a train set, but my sister had a big doll's house. We both played with it. I don't know where it is now. I found my old rollerblades, though.
لم يكن لدى قطار، ولكن كان لدى أختى منزل دمية كبير. لعب كلانا به. لا أعرف أين هو الآن. على الرغم من ذلك لقد وجدت عجلات التزلج الخاصة بى.



Adam

Brilliant! Did you have a go on them?

رائع! هل قمت بتجربتها ؟



Yaseen

No, I wanted to, but they were too small.

لا، أردت ذلك، ولكنها كانت صغيرة جدا.

Fares

I didn't have rollerblades, but I had a skateboard. I could go really fast after a while!

لم يكن لدى عجلات تزلج ، ولكن كان لدى لوح تزلج. استطعت الذهاب سريعا به بعد فترة قصيرة.



Yaseen

Cool! Did you play board games when you were younger?

رائع! هل كنت تلعب الألعاب اللوحية عندما كنت أصغر سنا؟



Fares

Yes, we played board games. I played with my older brother, but he usually beat me!

نعم، لعبنا ألعابا لوحية. لعبتها مع أخى الأكبر، ولكن كان عادة ما يهزمنى!



Adam

We didn't play board games very often, but we played marbles.

لم نلعب الألعاب اللوحية فى كثير من الأحيان، ولكننا لعبنا بالكرات الرخامية.



Fares

So did I! I think I'll look for some of my old toys later. I'd love to see my favorite cuddly toy again.

وأنا كذلك! أعتقد أننى سأبحث عن بعض ألعابى القديمة فى وقت لاحق. أود أن أرى دمية العناق المفضلة لدى مرة أخرى.



Lesson 1



• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: (6)

1. Yaseen loved playing .... with his brother Sami.
   (a. train set – b. marbles – c. action figure – d. board game)
2. Yaseen had a small ...., that he thought was good fun.
   (a. doll's house – b. cuddly toy – c. skateboard – d. rollerblades)
3. Yaseen's favorite .... was his action figure.
   (a. game – b. story – c. activity – d. toy)
4. Yaseen and Sami played board games very often, but Sami usually .... Yaseen.
   (a. helped – b. beat – c. shared – d. found)

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: (8)

1. Did you .... your grandma on the weekend?
   a) take b) go c) visit d) make up
2. Nagwa has a big .... house that she likes to play with.
   a) board b) cuddly c) train d) doll's
3. Moaz couldn't have a .... on my rollerblades. They were too small for him.
   a) visit b) ride c) go d) action
4. My favorite toy when I was younger was my action ....
   a) board b) house c) set d) figure
5. I often played board .... with my brother, but he usually beat me.
   a) games b) toys c) figures d) houses
6. Salwa just thought of a new game. She .... it up.
   a) made b) had c) went d) loved
7. My friend has an amazing .... set. He loves playing with it.
   a) figure b) cuddly c) train d) board
8. When you .... someone in a game, you are more successful than he is.
   a) help b) share c) make up d) beat

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: (4)

skateboard – younger – beat – board – house

Nader and Habiba are best friends. They met every weekend since they were ten. When Nader was ....(1)........, he loved playing marbles. He didn't have rollerblades, but he had a ....(2)......... that could really go fast. Habiba really enjoyed playing with her doll's ....(3)......... . She had a cuddly toy that was soft and nice. Habiba and Nader often played ....(4)........... games together to enjoy their free time.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:



Hello! My name is Waleed. I always visit my grandma on the weekend. When I visited my grandma last weekend, I found a box of my old toys in her house. I was so excited to see all my old toys again. When I was younger, my favorite toy was the train set. I loved playing with my action figures, too! I made up lots of games for them. My sister had a big doll's house. We both played with it. I also found my rollerblades. I wanted to have a go on them, but they were too small.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 The general idea of the text is about ....
   a) Waleed's toys b) Waleed's sisters
   c) Waleed's house d) Waleed's grandparents

2 Waleed loved playing with ....
   a) action figures b) rollerblades
   c) marbles d) cuddly toys

3 The underlined verb "have a go" means ....
   a) like b) try something c) dislike d) invent

B Answer the following questions:

4 What was Waleed's favorite toy when he was young?

....

5 What did Waleed's sister have?

....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:



1 did – What – there, – you – Omar – find?

....

2 didn't – very - play – often – We – games – board.

....

3 have – Did – he – a go – skateboard – on – the?

....

4 again – I'd – to see – love – my cuddly – toy.

....

6 Punctuate the following:



my favorite toy was a train set

....





Lesson 2



A I was very good at hide and seek كنت بارعًا جدًا فى لعبة الغميضة



Listen, point, and say: استمع، أشر وقل:

Main vocabulary



skipping نط الحبل



hide and seek لعبة الغميضة



hopscotch لعبة المربعات

Extra vocabulary

yet	حتى الآن	interesting (adj.)	مثير للاهتمام	colored (adj.)	ملون
chalk	طباشير	difficult (adj.)	صعب	stickers	ملصقات
helmet	خوذة	knee pads	واق ركبة	imagination	خيال

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs			أفعـــال منتظمـة		
Present		Past	Present		Past
start	يبدأ	started	use	يستخدم	used
practice	يتدرب	practiced	prefer	يفضل	preferred
Irregular verbs			**أفعال غير منتظمة**		
Present		Past	Present		Past
hide	يختبئ	hid	draw	يرسم	drew
hurt	يؤذى	hurt	fall off	يسقط	fell off

Expressions and Phrases

it's really interesting	إنه حقًا مثير للاهتمام	for a very long time	لفترة طويلة جدًا
practice a lot with ...	يتدرب كثيرًا مع ...	at all	على الإطلاق
it was really good fun	كان حقًا ممتعًا	quite small	صغير إلى حد ما

Important sentences جمل هامة

- Rania started her project about toys and games.
- بدأت رانيا مشروعها عن اللعب والألعاب.
- When she was younger, she liked playing hide and seek.
- عندما كانت صغيرة كانت تحب أن تلعب لعبة الغميضة.
- Sarah was good at hide and seek, too. She also liked playing hopscotch.
- سارة كانت جيدة أيضًا فى لعبة الغميضة، وكانت تحب أيضًا لعبة المربعات.



Listen, read, and role-play:

استمع، اقرأ وتبادل الأدوار:



Sarah

Hi Rania, have you started the project about toys and games yet?

مرحبا رانيا، هل بدأت المشروع الخاص بالألعاب واللعب بعد؟



Rania

Hi Sarah. Yes, I started it on the weekend. It's really interesting!

مرحبا سارة. نعم ، بدأت ذلك فى عطلة نهاية الأسبوع. إنه مثير للاهتمام حقا!

Sarah

Yes, it is. What games did you like playing when you were younger?

نعم ، إنها كذلك. ما الألعاب التى أحببتِ لعبها عندما كنتِ أصغر سنًّا؟



Rania

I thought hide and seek was fun. I was very good at hiding!

أعتقد لعبة الغميضة كانت ممتعة. كنت جيدة جدًّا فى الاختباء.

Sarah

I was good at it, too! I could hide for a very long time. I also really liked playing hopscotch with my friends. We used different colored chalk to draw the squares.

لقد كنت جيدة فى ذلك أيضًا! كان بإمكانى الاختباء لفترة طويلة جدًّا. أنا أيضًا أحببت حقا لعب لعبة المربعات مع أصدقائى. استخدمنا طباشير ملونًا لرسم المربعات.



Rania

I thought hopscotch was quite good, but I preferred skipping.

اعتقدت أن لعبة المربعات كانت جيدة إلى حد ما، ولكنى فضلت لعبة نط الحبل.

Sarah

I liked skipping, but I wasn't very good at it. Some skipping games are so difficult!

أحببت لعبة نط الحبل، لكننى لم أكن جيدة فى ذلك. بعض ألعاب نط الحبل صعبة جدًّا!



Rania

Yes, they are. I had to practice a lot with my sister!

نعم ، هى كذلك. كان على التدرب كثيرا مع أختى!

Sarah

Ah, my brother didn't practice with me. He didn't like skipping at all! We often played marbles together, though.

أخى لم يتدرب معى. لم يكن يحب نط الحبل على الإطلاق! إلا أننا غالبا ما لعبنا الكرات الرخامية معا رغم ذلك.

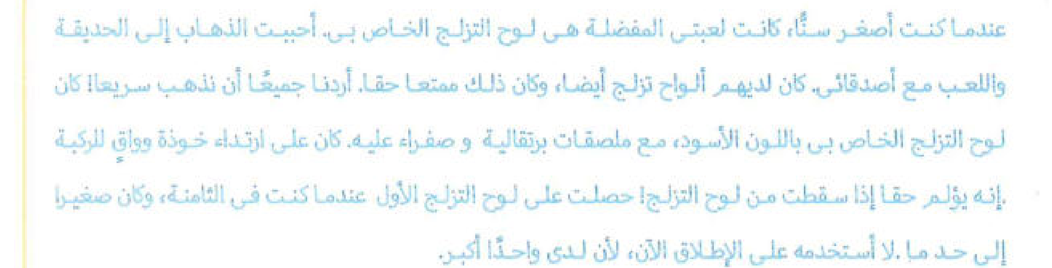
Look and read: انظر واقرأ:

My Favorite Toy لعبتى المفضلة

by Youssef كتبه يوسف



When I was younger, my favorite toy was my skateboard. I loved going to the park and playing with my friends. They had skateboards, too, and it was really good fun. We all wanted to go so fast(1)! My skateboard was black, with orange(2) and yellow stickers on it. I had to wear a helmet and knee pads. It really hurts if you fall off a skateboard! I got my first(3) skateboard when I was eight, and it was quite small. I don't use it at all now, because I have a bigger one.



عندما كنت أصغر سنًا، كانت لعبتى المفضلة هى لوح التزلج الخاص بى. أحببت الذهاب إلى الحديقة واللعب مع أصدقائى. كان لديهم ألواح تزلج أيضا، وكان ذلك ممتعا حقا. أردنا جميعًا أن نذهب سريعا! كان لوح التزلج الخاص بى باللون الأسود، مع ملصقات برتقالية و صفراء عليه. كان على ارتداء خوذة وواقٍ للركبة .إنه يؤلم حقا إذا سقطت من لوح التزلج! حصلت على لوح التزلج الأول عندما كنت فى الثامنة، وكان صغيرا إلى حد ما. لا أستخدمه على الإطلاق الآن، لأن لدى واحدًا أكبر.

(1)	سريعًا
(2)	برتقالى
(3)	الأول

Language Notes

To talk about things, we could /couldn't do well in the past.

للتحدث عن الأشياء التى كنا نجيد أو لم نُجِد فعلها فى الماضى.

Subject + was/were + good at + noun or v.ing.

Subject + wasn't/weren't + good at + noun or v.ing.

I was good at skipping.

They weren't good at hide and seek.



Language Focus

Intensifiers معززات الصفات والأفعال

We use intensifiers to give a stronger meaning to adjectives and verbs.

نستخدم «معززات الصفات والأفعال» لإعطاء درجة من القوة للصفة والفعل.

really, so, very: حقًا / جدًا:

They're used to give a stronger meaning to the adjective or the verb.

يستخدموا لجعل الصفة أو الفعل أقوى.

لاحظ أن "so/very" تأتي قبل الصفات ولكن "really" تأتي قبل الصفات أو الأفعال.

intensifier معزز | adjective صفة

really حقًا → e.g. I was really good at hiding!

intensifier معزز | verb فعل

really + verb فعل → e.g. I really liked playing hopscotch.

intensifier معزز | adjective صفة

very جدًا → e.g. Sarah wasn't very good at skipping.

intensifier معزز | adjective صفة

so جدًا → e.g. Some skipping games are so difficult.

quite: إلى حد ما:

It's used to make the adjective less strong. (It comes before the adjective).
تستخدم لجعل الصفة أقل قوة (وتأتي قبل الصفة).

intensifier معزز — adjective صفة

quite إلى حد ما → e.g. I thought hopscotch was quite good, but I preferred skipping.

at all: على الإطلاق:

It's used to strengthen the negative sentences.
تستخدم لجعل الجملة المنفية أقوى.

verb فعل — intensifier معزز

at all على الإطلاق → e.g. He didn't like skipping at all.

Check point

Choose the correct answer:

1 Manal is (not – quite – very – at all) good at reading. She reads four books every week.
2 My brother didn't like running (so – really – quite – at all).
3 I think skipping is (really – quite – so – very) good, but I prefer hopscotch.
4 They (didn't – really – so – very) enjoyed riding their bikes. It was great fun.
5 Nour doesn't enjoy playing outside (very – really – so – at all).
6 Brilliant! I think you are (quite – not – at all – really) good at playing tennis.
7 Salma was really (happier – happiest – happy – happily). She got the full mark.



Lesson 2



• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

8

1 My cousins liked playing .... They used colored chalk to draw the squares.
a) hide and seek b) skipping c) hopscotch d) running

2 .... and seek was my favorite game when I was younger.
a) Catch b) Hide c) Skip d) Run

3 We all wanted to go fast on our .... It was really good fun.
a) stickers b) skateboards c) projects d) games

4 When Amina was younger, she wasn't good at making up new games ....
a) very b) so c) really d) at all

5 Put on your .... on your head. It hurts if you fall off your skateboard.
a) knee pads b) chalk c) helmet d) hopscotch

6 I think hopscotch is .... good, but I prefer hide and seek.
a) really b) quite c) very d) so

7 He .... skipping at all. He thought some skipping games were difficult.
a) liked b) loved c) adored d) didn't like

8 You can wear .... to protect your knee while skateboarding.
a) helmet b) T-shirt c) knee pads d) rollerblades

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

4

seek – interesting – bored – chalk – hopscotch

Salwa started a project about toys and games last week. She thinks it's really ....(1).......... . When Salwa was younger, she thought hide and ....(2).......... was fun. She was very good at hiding. She also liked playing ....(3).......... with her friends at the park. They used colored ....(4).......... to draw the squares. Salwa thought skipping was quite good, but she preferred running. She thought it's great fun.

3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

5

1. could – She – for – long – a very – hide – time.

....

2. often – We – played – together – marbles.

....

3. did – What – like – you – games – playing?

....

4. didn't – My brother – like – skipping – at all.

....

5. started – Have – you – yet – project – your?

....

4 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

8

1. We are (so) .... good at climbing. I think we need more practice.
2. They didn't enjoy playing hide and seek (really) ....
3. It's (at all) .... hot to go out today. I'll stay home.
4. The book was really (fun) ....
5. I (so) .... like your present, thank you.
6. This dress is (really) .... nice, but still not nice enough to buy.
7. My brother speaks English (quite) .... well. He speaks like Americans.
8. Nour thinks skipping is (very) .... good, but she prefers running.

5 Punctuate the following:

1

rania wasn't good at skipping

....

6 Write a text of about FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements:

5

"Games you are good at"

What games are you good at? – How often do you play them?

....

....

....

....



Lesson 3





Story



Listen and say: استمع وقل:

Main vocabulary

the market	السوق	stall	كشك
button	زر	train set	لعبة القطار
trunk	خرطوم الفيل	sail	شراع

Extra vocabulary

tired (adj.)	متعب	parents	والدان	hot (adj.)	حار
feet	أقدام	tomatoes	طماطم	lemonade	عصير الليمون
wood	خشب	metal	معدن	boats	قوارب
animals	حيوانات	today	اليوم	wheels	عجلات
brilliant (adj.)	رائع	beautiful (adj.)	جميل	amazing (adj.)	رائع
elephant	فيل	cloth	قماش	child	طفل

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعـــال منتظمـة

Present		Past	Present		Past
shop	يتسوق	shopped	want	يريد	wanted
ask	يطلب	asked	wait	ينتظر	waited
look	ينظر	looked	enjoy	يستمتع	enjoyed
smile	يبتسم	smiled	pick up	يلتقط	picked up
push	يضغط على	pushed	turn	يعمل /يدور	turned
start	يبدأ	started	move	يتحرك	moved
stop	يتوقف	stopped	laugh	يضحك	laughed

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
hurt	يؤلم	hurt	see	يرى	saw
choose	يختار	chose	sit	يجلس	sat
make	يصنع	made	come	يأتي	came
take	يأخذ	took	buy	يشترى	bought

Expressions and Phrases

go home	يذهب للمنزل	almost finished	على وشك الانتهاء
Wait here!	انتظر هنا!	get you some	أحضر لك بعض...
made from	مصنوع من	enjoy looking	يستمتع بالنظر
sitting behind	يجلس خلف	made out of wood	مصنوع من الخشب
put (something) down	يضع (شيئًا ما)	started to move	بدأت في التحرك
few years ago	منذ عدة سنوات	I'll take it	سأشتريها

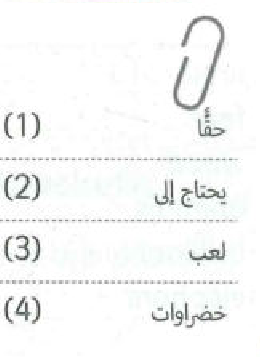


We loved playing with our train set

لقد أحببنا اللعب بالقطار

Look and read: انظر واقرأ:

The beginning



Ali was tired. His parents were shopping at the market. It was a hot day. Ali's feet hurt, and he really(1) wanted to go home.
"Are you OK, Ali?" asked Mom. "We've almost finished. We need(2) tomatoes from this stall. Wait here, then I'll get you some lemonade." "Thanks. Mom," said Ali. He waited, and then he saw a stall with toys(3) made from wood and metal. There were boats, trains, and animals. Ali's parents were choosing vegetables(4), so Ali asked if he could look at the toys.
"OK," said Dad. "But we aren't buying toys today!"
"That's OK," said Ali. "I enjoy looking".

(1)	حقًا
(2)	يحتاج إلى
(3)	لعب
(4)	خضراوات

كان علي متعبا. كان والداه يتسوقان في السوق. كان يوما حارا. كانت قدما علي تؤلمه ، وأراد حقا العودة إلى المنزل.
«هل أنت بخير، علي؟ » سألت يا الأم . «لقد انتهينا تقريبا. نحتاج إلى الطماطم من هذا الكشك. انتظر هنا، ثم سأحضر لك بعض عصير الليمون».
قال علي: «شكرا، أمي». انتظر ، ثم رأى كشكا به ألعاب مصنوعة من الخشب والمعدن. كانت هناك قوارب وقطارات وحيوانات.
كان والدا علي يختاران الخضار ، لذلك سأل علي عما إذا كان بإمكانه النظر إلى الألعاب.
قال أبي: «حسنا» «لكننا لا نشترى الألعاب اليوم!» قال علي: «هذا جيد». «أنا أستمتع بالنظر».

The middle

An old man was sitting behind the stall, making a small cat out of wood. He saw Ali looking at the toys and smiled.
The man picked up a train. "Look at this," he said. He pushed a button under the train, and the wheels turned. When he put it down on the stall, it started to move.
"Do you like trains?" he asked.
"I stopped playing with my train set a few years ago." Ali replied. "But this is brilliant".
Ali looked at the train again. It was small(5), but very beautiful. The other toys on the stall were amazing, too. There was an elephant which moved its trunk. There was a boat with beautiful cloth sails.

(5)	صغير

كان رجل عجوز يجلس خلف الكشك ، يصنع قطة صغيرة من الخشب. رأى علي ينظر إلى الألعاب وابتسم.
التقط الرجل قطارا. قال: «انظر إلى هذا». دفع زرًا تحت القطار ، فانطلقت العجلات. عندما وضعه على الكشك بدأ يتحرك.
سأل الرجل: «هل تحب القطارات؟» .
أجاب علي: «توقفت عن اللعب بقطاري قبل بضع سنوات». «لكن هذا رائع».
نظر علي إلى القطار مرة أخرى. كان صغيرا ، لكنه جميل جدا. كانت الألعاب الأخرى في الكشك مذهلة أيضا. كان هناك فيل يحرك خرطومه.
كان هناك قارب بأشرعة جميلة مصنوعة من القماش.

The end

Ali's dad came to see. "Wow! My brother[6] and I had a train like this when I was a child!" he said. "We loved playing with our train set." He picked up the train, smiling. "I'll take it!" said Dad.

Ali laughed. "I thought[7] you said we weren't buying toys today, Dad!" Dad laughed. You can play with it too!"

(6) أخي

(7) اعتقدت

جاء والد على ليرى. قال الأب: «واو! كان لدى أنا وأخى قطار مثل هذا عندما كنت طفلا!». «لقد أحببنا اللعب مع مجموعة القطارات لدينا».
التقط القطار مبتسما. قال الأب: «سآخذها!».
ضحك على: «اعتقدت أنك قلت إننا لم نشترِ ألعابا اليوم يا أبى!».
ضحك الأب: «يمكنك أن تلعب معها أيضا!».

Definitions

stall	كشك	a large table that you use to sell things from at a market طاولة كبيرة نستخدمها لبيع الأشياء فى السوق.
button	زر	what you touch to make a machine work ما تلمسه لجعل الآلة تعمل
trunk	خرطوم الفيل	the long nose of an elephant أنف الفيل الطويل
sail	شراع	strong pieces of cloth that make a boat move قطع قوية من القماش التى تجعل القارب يتحرك.

Check point

1 What was the man in the stall doing?

....

2 What did Ali think about the train?

....

Vocabulary Check

- هناك بعض الأفعال مثل (love - stop - enjoy) يأتى بعدها الفعل مضاف إليه ing ويسمى (Gerund).

e.g. enjoy looking – stop playing – love playing

Language Focus

"Gerund"
Verbs followed by (verb + ing) (ing + أفعال متبوعة (بفعل

start	→	e.g. Hana **started reading** stories a year ago.
continue	→	e.g. Moaz **continued skipping** for a while.
finish	→	e.g. They **finished painting** their room yesterday.
stop	→	e.g. I **stopped playing** with my train set a few years ago.
like	→	e.g. They **like playing** with a train set.
love	→	e.g. Nour **loves making** up new games.
enjoy	→	e.g. I **enjoy watching** TV at night.
prefer	→	e.g. I **prefer drinking** coffee to tea.
dislike	→	e.g. We **dislike playing** with old toys.
hate	→	e.g. Nader and Omar **hate playing** hide and seek.
imagine	→	e.g. They **imagined flying** a plane.

Check point

Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. Salma finished (study) .... at 7 pm.
2. Adam enjoys (played) .... tennis with his friends.
3. Hossam dislikes (skip) .... at all.
4. Waleed and Osama love (sing) ....
5. He must stop (shout) .... at the library.
6. I like (walk) .... in the rain.
7. Can you imagine (wins) .... a ticket for the concert?
8. Chefs started (cook) .... in the morning.



Pronunciation

Words with "ght" and "gh"



Listen and say: استمع وقل:

- When "ght" is in the middle or at the end of a word, the "gh" is silent. We only pronounce the final "-t".

عندما تكون "ght" فى منتصف أو نهاية الكلمة ,لا ننطق "gh" وننطق فقط حرف "t" الأخير.

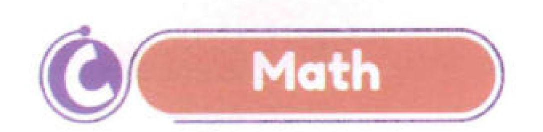
- "gh" in the middle or at end of a word is usually pronounced /f/.

عندما تأتى "gh" فى منتصف أو نهاية الكلمة غالبا ما تنطق /f/.

"ght" as /t/	"gh" as /f/
bought اشترى	draughts لعبة الطاولة
thought اعتقد	laughed ضحك
drought جفاف	coughed كح (سعل)
daughter ابنة	enough كافٍ
brought أحضر	rough خشن
	tough قاسٍ
	laughter الضحك



هناك بعض الكلمات لا تنطق فيها "gh" مثل: though - through.



Using graphs استخدام الرسوم البيانية



Look, read, and notice: انظر، اقرأ، ولاحظ:

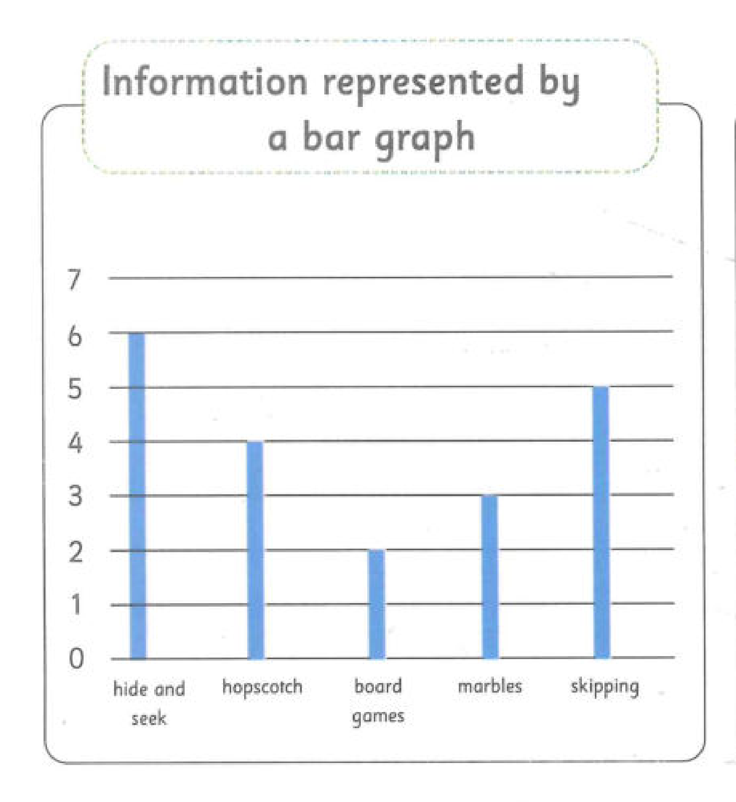
We use graphs like bar graphs and pie charts as a way to show information.
نستخدم الرسوم البيانية كالرسم البيانى العمودى والدائرى كطريقة لعرض المعلومات.

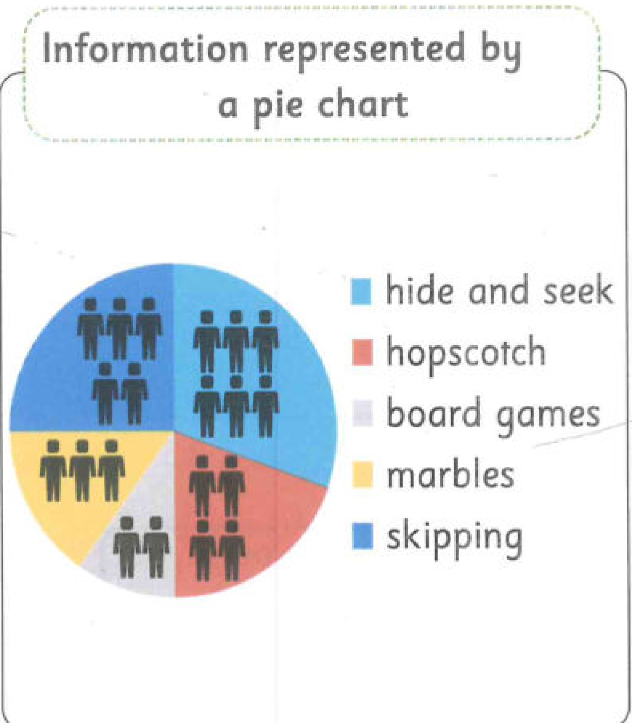


- Last week, we had a class vote on the first five free-time games in the class. 20 students voted and the results came as follows.

الأسبوع الماضى قمنا بعمل تصويت فى الفصل لأفضل خمس ألعاب لقضاء وقت الفراغ . شارك عشرون طالبًا فى التصويت وجاءت النتائج كالتالى.

Games	hide and seek	hopscotch	board games	marbles	skipping
Numbers of students	6	4	2	3	5





Practice

Lesson 3



• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

6

1. Omar was doing a class quiz about free-time ....
   (a. toys – b. games – c. projects – d. stories)
2. Nader loved games like ...., climbing, and playing football.
   (a. skipping – b. hide and seek – c. action figures – d. running)
3. Reda enjoyed playing .... and hide and seek.
   (a. hopscotch – b. running – c. climbing – d. football)
4. Sama preferred playing with her ....
   (a. skateboard – b. rollerblades – c. doll's house – d. train set)

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

8

1. A .... is a large table that you use to sell things at the market. SB
   a) toy b) button c) stall d) sail
2. The .... is the long nose of the elephant.
   a) market b) trunk c) sail d) stall
3. Push the .... to make the machine work, please.
   a) trunk b) stall c) market d) button
4. You need a .... to make the boat move.
   a) sail b) button c) trunk d) market
5. Can you imagine .... a train?
   a) drive b) driving c) drives d) drove
6. My cousins enjoyed .... squares for the hopscotch.
   a) draw b) draws c) drawing d) drew
7. When will you finish .... for your exam?
   a) studying b) study c) studies d) studied
8. Could you stop .... your little brother, Noha?
   a) bothers b) bothered c) bother d) bothering

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

4

market – stall – playing – toys – mom

Ali really enjoys spending time outside. Last week, he went shopping with his parents at the ....(1)........... . He saw a stall that sold toys. The man in the ....(2)........... showed Ali a boat, a train set, and small bus that could move. Ali thought the ....(3)........... were quite good, but he preferred the boat. He thought it was really interesting, so he bought it. When he went home, he enjoyed ....(4)........... with it.

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

4

1. stopped – She – playing – with – set – the train.

   ....

2. liked – They – playing – with – figures – action.

   ....

3. he – Did – finish – the – book – reading?

   ....

4. with our – We – enjoyed – going – shopping – parents.

   ....

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

10

1. Adel didn't like (play) .... board games at all.
2. They enjoyed (read) .... short stories.
3. Mona stopped (run) .... to have some rest.
4. We imagined (climb) .... a very big mountain.
5. He hates (skip) .... and hopscotch.
6. I started (make) .... up new games when I was young.
7. Mom finished (cook) .... dinner two hours ago.
8. Fares and Nader continued (practice) .... for the race.
9. They finished (paint) .... the posters and tided up.
10. Hanaa and Doaa prefer (paint) .... with oil paints.

SB

6 Punctuate the following:

2

ola laughed when she played draughts

....

wael bought some marbles yesterday

....





Lessons 4 & 5

Writing & Project



Listen and say: استمع وقل:

Main vocabulary

video game	ألعاب الفيديو	bricks	طوب (مكعبات البناء)
creative (adj.)	مبدع	console	لوحة تحكم

Extra vocabulary

outside	بالخارج	weekend	عطلة نهاية الأسبوع	cities	مدن
new (adj.)	جديد	images	صور	modern (adj.)	حديث
adventure games	ألعاب مغامرة	places	أماكن	problem	مشكلة
difficult (adj.)	صعب	exciting (adj.)	مثير	great (adj.)	عظيم

Expressions and Phrases

all kinds of	كل أنواع	very often	كثيرًا جدًّا
for about an hour	لمدة ساعة تقريبا	on the weekend	فى عطلة نهاية الأسبوع
make something new	يصنع شيئا جديدا	find something important	يجد شيئًا هامًا
solve a problem	يحل مشكلة	play them too much	يلعب بهم لفترة طويلة



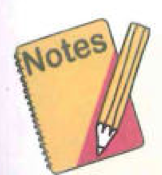
Important sentences جمل هامة

- I love playing all kinds of games.
- أنا أحب لعب جميع أنواع الألعاب.

- My favorite games are video games. I don't play them very often, though.
- ألعاب الفيديو هى المفضلة لدى، رغم أننى لا ألعبها كثيرًا.

- My favorite games are ones where you build cities.
- أفضل الألعاب بالنسبة لى هى تلك التى يمكنك فيها بناء المدن.

- Video games can be a problem when you play them too much.
- يمكن أن تكون ألعاب الفيديو مشكلة عندما تلعبها كثيرًا.



- للتعبير عن الرأى نستخدم I think.

e.g. I think board games can be fun.

- لتوضيح السبب نستخدم جملة + because.

e.g. I like these games because I can be creative.



Look and read: انظر واقرأ:

A description of my favorite game وصف للعبة المفضلة لدى

My favorite video game لعبة الفيديو المفضلة الخاصة بى

by Belal كتبه بلال



I love playing all kinds of games. I play games outside with my friends, and at school we play hopscotch and board games. I also enjoy playing board games with my sister, although[1] she often beats me!

أحب لعب جميع أنواع الألعاب. ألعب الألعاب فى الخارج مع أصدقائى، وفى المدرسة نلعب لعبة المربعات والألعاب اللوحية. أنا أستمتع أيضًا بلعب الألعاب اللوحية مع أختى، رغم أنها غالبًا ما تهزمنى!

(1) على الرغم من

My favorite games are video games. I don't play them very often, though. I play for about an hour on the weekend. It's fun! My favorite games are ones where[2] you build cities. I've made a really big city using different bricks. It has animals and plants in it, too. I like these games because you can be creative and make something new.

ألعابى المفضلة هى ألعاب الفيديو. أنا لا ألعبها فى كثير من الأحيان، على أية حال. ألعب لمدة ساعة تقريبًا فى عطلة نهاية الأسبوع. إنها متعة! ألعابى المفضلة هى تلك التى تبنى فيها المدن. لقد صنعت مدينة كبيرة حقًّا باستخدام مكعبات البناء . يوجد بها حيوانات ونباتات أيضًا. أنا أحب هذه الألعاب لأنك يمكنك أن تكون مبدعًا، وتصنع شيئًا جديدًا.

(2) حيث

Some of the images in modern video games are amazing. I've got a new games console, which I share[3] with my sister. She enjoys playing adventure games, where you can go to different places to find something important or solve a problem. They can be difficult, but I think they can be fun[4], too, because they're so exciting.



بعض الصور فى ألعاب الفيديو الحديثة مذهلة. لقد حصلت على وحدة تحكم ألعاب جديدة، والتى أشاركها مع أختى. تستمتع أختى بلعب ألعاب المغامرات، حيث يمكنك الذهاب إلى أماكن مختلفة للعثور على أشياء هامة أو حل مشكلة. يمكن أن تكون صعبة ولكن أعتقد أنها يمكن أن تكون ممتعة، أيضًا، للغاية.

(3) يتشارك

(4) ممتع

Video games can be a problem when you play them too much. However, I think they can be great when you do something that is very creative or exciting. You can often play with your friends, too.

يمكن أن تكون ألعاب الفيديو مشكلة عندما تلعبها كثيرًا. ومع ذلك، أعتقد أنها يمكن أن تكون رائعة عندما تفعل شيئًا مبدعًا أو مثيرًا للغاية. يمكنك غالبًا اللعب مع أصدقائك أيضًا.



• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

8

1. I love playing all .... of games.
   a) bricks b) kinds c) problems d) plants
2. She plays games .... with her friends like hopscotch.
   a) indoors b) inside c) outside d) indoor
3. My sister always .... me when we play together. I never win.
   a) helps b) beats c) hates d) shares
4. You can play video games for about ....
   a) too much b) many hours c) one hour d) a whole day
5. My favorite games are the ones where I can build cities with different ....
   a) problems b) sets c) sticks d) bricks
6. I like games where I can solve .... or do something exciting.
   a) bricks b) friends c) problems d) adventures
7. When you do something new, you are ....
   a) bored b) creative c) annoyed d) unhappy
8. They can go to different .... to find important things.
   a) kinds b) places c) problems d) plants

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

4

players – description – hates – likes – square

Nadia loves all kinds of board games. Her favorite board game is called "Ludo". Here's a ....(1)............ of how you can play it. You need two or four ....(2)............ to play the game. Each player has four pieces to move into their home ....(3)............ to win. Each player has a different color home square. Nadia plays ludo with her friends very often. She ....(4)............ this game because she thinks you need both luck and strategy to win.

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

5

Ramy loves playing all kinds of games. He plays games outside with his friends, and at school they play hopscotch and board games. Ramy's favorite games are video games. He doesn't play them very often, though. He plays for about an hour on the weekend. It's fun! His favorite games are ones where he builds cities. He's made big cities with animals and plants using different bricks. Ramy likes these

games because he can be creative when he plays them. Ramy thinks video games can be a problem when you play them too much. However, he thinks they can be great when they help you solve problems or do something exciting.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 It's .... if you play video games for only one hour.
a) good b) wrong c) unhealthy d) bad

2 The underlined word "solve" means ....
a) create b) find a solution c) make d) produce

3 Ramy uses .... to build cities.
a) animals b) games c) bricks d) plants

B Answer the following questions:

4 Why does Ramy like games where he can build cities?

....

5 When can video games be great?

....

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

4

1 have – a new – They – got – console – games.

....

2 with – her – She – friends – plays – outside.

....

3 enjoys – playing – games – My brother – adventure.

....

4 are – amazing – The images – video – games – in.

....

5 Punctuate the following:

1

nada thinks video games are fun

....

6 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements:

5

"Video games"

for about an hour – build cities

....

....

....

....

Unit 8 REVIEW



Vocabulary

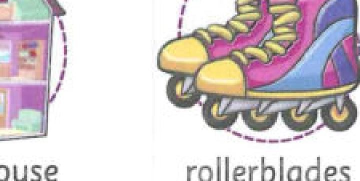




doll's house



rollerblades



action figure



marbles



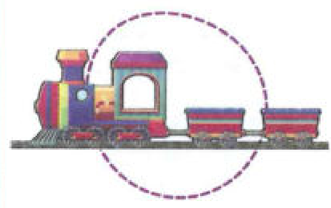
board game



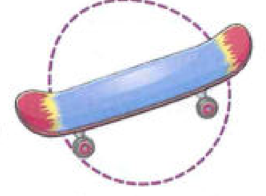
cuddly toy



train set



skateboard



Intensifiers

really, so, very:

They're used to give a stronger meaning to the adjective or the verb.

e.g. Salma was very good at hiding.

e.g. I really liked skipping.

quite:

It's used to to make the adjective less strong.

e.g. He's quite good at playing chess.

at all:

It's used to strengthen the negative sentences.

e.g. The boy wasn't friendly at all.

e.g. He didn't like hopscotch at all.

Pronunciation

"ght" as /t/

- thought
- daughter
- drought
- bought
- brought

"gh" as /f/

- draughts
- laughed
- coughed
- enough
- rough
- tough
- laughter





Lesson 1

لعبة القطار	....	بيت اللعبة	....
لوح تزلج	....	عجلة التزلج	....
أصغر سنًّا	....	مجسم على شكل شخصية	....
مفضل	....	كرات رخام	....
عبقري	....	لعبة لوحية	....
ناجح	....	دمية عناق	....

Lesson 2

ملون	....	نط الحبل	....
صعب	....	لعبة الغميضة	....
يختبئ	....	لعبة المربعات	....
طباشير	....	مشروع	....
مربعات	....	خوذة	....
ملصقات	....	خيال	....
واقى ركبة	....	مثير للاهتمام	....

Lesson 3

ابنة	....	كشك	....
أحضر	....	زر	....
ضحك	....	شراع	....
كح (سعل)	....	خرطوم الفيل	....
كافٍ	....	لعبة الطاولة	....
خشن	....	اشترى	....
أعتقد	....	جفاف	....

Lessons 4 & 5

مدن	....	ألعاب الفيديو	....
مبدع	....	طوب (مكعبات البناء)	....
لوحة تحكم	....	عطلة نهاية الأسبوع	....
مشكلة	....	عظيم	....
أماكن	....	حيوانات	....
ألعاب المغامرة	....	حديث	....
صور	....	بالخارج	....

تأكد من حفظك لكلمات الدروس قبل البدء فى إجابة اختبار الوحدة.

WRITING TIME



How to write about your favorite toy in the past:

1. I found a box of my old toys and it was exciting.
2. There was a/an + اسم لعبة . I loved playing with it.
3. I also enjoyed playing with + اسم لعبة اخرى.
4. When I was younger, my favorite toy was + اسم لعبة.
5. I didn't have a + اسم لعبة, but my sister had + اسم لعبة أخرى.

I found a box of my old toys and it was exciting. There was an action figure. I loved playing with it. I also enjoyed playing marbles. When I was younger, my favorite toy was the train set. I didn't have a cuddly toy, but my sister had a doll's house. We both played with it.

How to write about games you were good/bad at:

1. I loved all kinds of games.
2. I was very good at + اسم لعبة.
3. I thought + اسم لعبة + was quite good, but I preferred + اسم لعبة أخرى.
4. I really enjoyed + اسم لعبة أو نشاط.
5. I didn't like /enjoy + اسم لعبة أو نشاط at all.

I loved all kinds of games. I was very good at skipping and running. I thought hopscotch was quite good, but I preferred playing hide and seek. I really enjoyed playing outside with my friends. I didn't like climbing at all.

How to write a description of your favorite game:

1. What is it called?
2. What kind of game is it?
3. How often do you play it?
4. How do you play it?
5. Why do you like it?

My favorite game is called hide and seek. It's a party game that you can play outside with your friends. I play it on the weekend with my cousins. And I play it at school with my friends very often. To play it, close your eyes, count to ten and run after other players. I like it because I think it's great fun.

لكى تتمكن من كتابة الموضوعات بشكل مميز، اتبع هذه الخطوات.

Unit 8 STUDENT'S BOOK CORNER

1 Read and match:

A	B
1 beat	a. ( ) try something.
2 have a go	b. ( ) thought of or invented.
3 made up	c. ( ) be more successful than someone in a game.

2 Choose the correct word to complete the sentence:

1 I (really / very) liked playing with cuddly toys when I was younger.

2 I thought action figures were (quite / very) good, but I preferred train sets.

3 My brother was (very / at all) good at football. He always beat me!

4 You're (quite / so) good at hide and seek – you always hide in the best places!

5 This book is not funny (at all / quite).

6 I (really / very) enjoyed playing marbles with my friends.

3 Read and complete with the correct form of the verb:

1 Amal imagined (fly) .... in a plane.

2 Ghada prefers (play) .... board games to skipping.

3 We enjoy (make up) .... stories for our action figures.

4 My sister stopped (let) .... me share her doll's house because I broke it.

5 They finished (paint) .... the posters and tidied up.

Test Yourself



UNIT 8



Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:



1. Fares and Dalia visited their .... in Luxor last week.
   (a. Grandpa – b. uncle – c. aunt – d. Grandma)
2. Fares was so .... to see his old toys.
   (a. bored – b. sad – c. excited – d. annoyed)
3. Fares loved playing with his ....
   (a. action figures – b. doll's house – c. skateboard – d. rollerblades)
4. Dalia had a/an .... They both played with it.
   (a. train set – b. action figure – c. marbles – d. doll's house)



Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:



1. Nadia wanted to have a .... on my rollerblades but she couldn't.
   a) visit b) go c) box d) figure
2. You need to wear .... It really hurts if you fall off your skateboard.
   a) train set b) rollerblades c) marbles d) knee pads
3. Nour likes to hug her .... until she falls asleep.
   a) cuddly toy b) action figure c) doll's house d) marbles
4. .... can go really fast. Be careful when you play with them.
   a) Action figures b) Doll's houses c) Skateboards d) Board games

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:



skateboard – making – action – playing – quite

Amina and Nour are best friends. They like to spend their free time in different ways. Amina really likes games that use a lot of imagination. She is very good at ....(1).......... up stories. She has a doll's house, some cuddly toys and some ....(2).......... figures. Nour really enjoys ....(3).......... outside. She liked running, climbing, and playing tennis. She was ....(4).......... good at handball, too.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:



Most people think that video games are bad for children. It's true that video games can be a problem when you play them too much. However, they can be great because they can help you do something that is very creative or exciting. They can

help you play with your friends too. To be safe, you can play video games for about an hour on the weekend or in your free time. There are amazing video games where you can build new cities with different bricks. There are also adventure games where you can go to different places to find something important or solve a problem.

A Choose the correct word from a, b, c, or d:

1 The general idea of the text is "..........................".
a) Children b) Adventure games c) Video games d) Building cities

2 You can play video games on the weekend or in your .... time.
a) school b) free c) homework d) practice

3 The underlined word "creative" means ....
a) bored b) create something new c) tired d) sad

B Answer the following questions:

4 When can video games be a problem? ....

5 Summarize the benefits of video games mentioned in the text. ....

Writing

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: 3

1 enjoyed – with – Heba – playing – figures – action.

....

2 favorite – Hassan's – a train – was – toy – set.

....

3 have – a go on – Did – you – rollerblades – your?

....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets: 2

1 Nawal didn't like (skip) .... at all.

2 They were (at all) .... good at playing hide and seek.

7 Punctuate the following: 1

rana was quite good at skateboarding

....

8 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements: 5

"A description of my favorite game"

What is it called? – How often do you play it?

....

....

....

....

Assess your progress ★★★★★

< 50%	50 : 64%	65 : 84%	85 : 100%
Study again	Practice more	Solve more exams	Well done!

Unit 8 Al-AZHAR CORNER



1 Read and complete the dialog:

skipping – like – Because – really – favorite

Nader : What's your .... free-time game, Ali?
Ali : I think hopscotch is quite good but my favorite is ....
Nader : Why do you .... it?
Ali : .... I think it's great fun. Do you like skipping?
Nader : Yes, I .... like it.

2 Read the text and answer the questions:

When Hana was younger, her favorite toy was her skateboard. Hana loved going to the park and playing with her friends. They had skateboards, too, and it was really good fun. They all wanted to go so fast! Hana's skateboard was black, with orange and yellow stickers on it. Hana had to wear a helmet and knee pads to protect herself. Hana got her first skateboard when she was eight, and it was quite small. She doesn't use it at all now, because she has a bigger one.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 The text is about "......................" .
a) Hana's friends b) Hana's favorite toy
c) The Park d) Yellow stickers

2 Hana's favorite toy was her ....
a) doll's house b) cuddly toy c) rollerblades d) skateboard

B Answer the following questions:

3 How does Hana protect herself? ....
4 When does Hana get her first skateboard? ....
5 Why doesn't Hana use her first skateboard now? ....

3 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

1 often – How – play – does – she – skipping?

....

2 loved – They – in the – hopscotch – playing – park.

....

3 found – a box – at – I – house – my – grandma's.

....

4 at all – He – like – going on – skateboards – didn't.

....

5 last – Did – you – visit – grandma – your – week?

....

Unit 9

What's the story?

ما القصة؟

Unit Overview

Student's Book Exercises 

Al-Azhar 

Answers 100% 

By the end of this unit, the student will be able to:

بنهاية هذه الوحدة، سيكون التلميذ قادرًا على أن:

- listen and read about Goha and his stories.
- understand and discuss what makes a good story.
- use the past continuous.
- write the beginning and ending of a short story.
- listen to a short story about a boy and a wolf.
- use sequencing adverbs.
- learn how to say words with the sound /w/.
- take part in a cooperative storytelling project.

- يستمع ويقرأ عن جحا وقصصه.
- يفهم ويناقش ما يجعل القصة جيدة.
- يستخدم الماضي المستمر.
- يكتب بداية ونهاية القصة القصيرة.
- يستمع إلى قصة قصيرة عن ولد وذئب.
- يستخدم كلمات الأحوال التي تدل على التسلسل.
- يتعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات بالصوت /w/.
- يشارك في مشروع رواية القصص التعاونية.

Did you know?

- **People have told stories for thousands of years. The Ancient Egyptians *carved pictures to tell stories.**

I can find it out!

- My classmates and I know many different children's stories like "Cinderella", "Pinocchio", and "The Frog Prince". The one we like best is "Alice's Adventures in Wonderland".

*carved منحوتة





Lesson 1

Goha's stories قصص جحا





Listen and say: استمع وقل:

Main vocabulary

story	قصة	son	ابن	review	مراجعة
setting	المكان (للقصة)	countryside	الريف	characters	شخصيات
ending	النهاية	narrator	الراوى	moral	العبرة (الدرس الأخلاق)

Extra vocabulary

donkey	حمار	market	سوق
journey	رحلة	funny (adj.)	مضحك
tired (adj.)	متعب	both	كلًّا من (كلاهما)
clever (adj.)	ذكى	great (adj.)	عظيم
too	أيضًا	details	تفاصيل
popular (adj.)	مشهور	known (adj.)	معروف
Sudan	السودان	Algeria	الجزائر
Morocco	المغرب	country	دولة
differences	اختلافات	everyone	كل واحد
main (adj.)	رئيسى	lesson	درس
then	ثم	though	رغم ذلك

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعــال منتظمـة

Present		Past	Present		Past
carry	يحمل	carried	pass	يمر	passed
happen	يحدث	happened			

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
write	يكتب	wrote	ride	يركب	rode
teach	يُعلم	taught	know	يعرف	knew
let	يسمح	let	tell	يخبر	told

Expressions and Phrases

take turns	يتبادلون الأدوار	have a turn	لديه دور
must be	لابد أن (للاستنتاج)	So do I.	وأنا كذلك.
In fact, ...	في الحقيقة ...	all over the world	في جميع أنحاء العالم
known by different names	معروف بأسماء مختلفة	for example	على سبيل المثال
the same	نفس الشيء	(be) right about	على حق في
write about	يكتب عن	(be) known as ...	معروف كـ
agree with	يتفق مع	last part of	الجزء الأخير من
learn from	يتعلم من	take place	يحدث

Definitions

characters	the people or animals in a story	الأشخاص أو الحيوانات في القصة	e.g. a man – his son – the donkey
ending	the last part of a story	الجزء الأخير من القصة	e.g. They both carry the donkey!
setting	the time and the place where a story happens	الوقت والمكان الذى تحدث فيه القصة	e.g. the countryside, many years ago
moral	the lesson you learn from a story	الدرس الذى تتعلمه من القصة	e.g. You can't make everyone happy.
narrator	the person who tells the story	الشخص الذى يروى القصة	e.g. Goha

Important sentences جمل هامة

- A man and his son went to the market on a donkey. — رجل وابنه ذهبا إلى السوق على ظهر حمار.
- When the boy rode the donkey, people didn't like it. — عندما ركب الولد الحمار، لم يعجب الناس بذلك.
- When the man rode the donkey, people didn't like it. — عندما ركب الرجل الحمار، لم يعجب الناس بذلك.
- When they both rode the donkey, people didn't like it. — عندما ركب كلاهما الحمار، لم يعجب الناس بذلك.
- In the ending, they both carried the donkey! — في النهاية، حمل الاثنان الحمار!

Check point

Choose the correct answer:

1. Before I buy a book, I read a (lesson – detail – journey – review) about it.
2. "Cinderella" is the main (setting – place – character – narrator) in the story.
3. Uncle Adel has a (girl – daughter – son – wife) called Hassan.
4. Pizza is very (popular – clever – funny – main) in Italy.
5. Dad works for 10 hours a day. He is always (happy – funny – clever – tired) after work.
6. My uncle has a farm in the (city – mountain – river – countryside).



Listen, read, and role-play:

استمع، اقرأ، وتبادل الأدوار:



Mom

What are you doing, Lama?

ماذا تفعلين يا لمى؟



Lama

I'm writing a review of one of Goha's stories. The one about a man who goes to the market with his son and a donkey. The setting is the countryside, many years ago. Two of the characters—the man and his son—take turns riding the donkey because it's a long journey. When the boy rides the donkey, the people they pass say he should let his father ride. When the man rides the donkey, they say that he should let his son have a turn. Then, they say the donkey must be tired. So, in the ending of the story, they both carry the donkey!

أنا أكتب مراجعة لإحدى قصص جحا. قصة الرجل الذى يذهب إلى السوق مع ابنه وحماره. المكان هو الريف، منذ سنوات عديدة. يتبادل اثنان من الشخصيات الأدوار - الرجل وابنه - على ركوب الحمار لأنها رحلة طويلة. عندما يركب الصبى الحمار، يقول الأشخاص الذين يمران بهم إنه يجب أن يترك والده يركب. عندما يركب الرجل الحمار، يقولون إنه يجب أن يترك ابنه ليأخذ دوره. ثم يقولون لابد أن الحمار متعب. وفى نهاية القصة، كلاهما يحمل الحمار!



Mom

Haha! His stories are both funny and clever, aren't they?

هاها! قصصه مضحكة وذكية، أليس كذلك؟



Lama

Yes, they are. He's a great narrator, too. I love the details he gives about the characters, the setting, and everything that happens.

بلى؛ هى كذلك. إنه راوٍ عظيم أيضًا. أنا أحب التفاصيل التى يقدمها حول الشخصيات والمكان وكل ما يحدث.



Mom

So do I. In fact, his stories are popular all over the world. But he's known by different names. For example, in Sudan, he's Jawha. In Algeria, he's Jeha, and in Morocco, he's Jha.

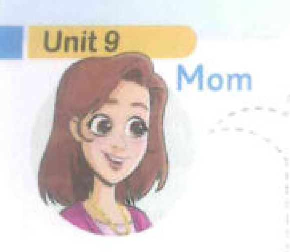
وأنا أيضًا. فى الواقع، تحظى قصصه بشعبية فى جميع أنحاء العالم. لكنه معروف بأسماء مختلفة. على سبيل المثال، فى السودان، هو جاوا. فى الجزائر اسمه جحا، وفى المغرب جها.



Lama

Are the stories the same in every country?

هل القصص هى نفسها فى كل بلد؟



Mom

There are some differences, but they all have a moral that Goha wants to teach us. What do you think is the moral of this story?

هناك بعض الاختلافات، لكن جميعها لديها مغزى يريد جحا أن يعلمنا إياه. ما رأيك في المغزى من هذه القصة؟



Lama

That you can't make everyone happy.

أنه لا يمكنك إسعاد الجميع.



Mom

I think Goha is right about that!

أنا أعتقد أن جحا على حق في ذلك!



Lama

Me, too. I'm happy that I know which story to write about, though!

أنا أيضًا. أنا سعيدة لأنني أعرف أي قصة سأكتب عنها، رغم ذلك!

Language Notes

① Expressing agreement:

التعبير عن الاتفاق:

So do I. / Me, too. وأنا أيضًا.

e.g. A: I love chocolate. B: So do I./ Me, too.

② Asking for agreement with the "question tag":

طلب الموافقة باستخدام «السؤال المذيل» بمعنى «أليس كذلك» :

Affirmative sentence, + (negative short question)?

عندما تكون الجمله مثبته، يكون السؤال المذيل منفي.

e.g. His stories are both funny and clever, aren't they?

Negative sentence, + (affirmative short question)?

عندما تكون الجمله منفيه، يكون السؤال المذيل مثبت.

e.g. Ali didn't come to school yesterday, did he?

Check point

Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1 I love ice cream. (I) ...., too.
2 I like fruits. (Also) .... do I.
3 They are friends, (are) .... they?
4 They didn't take the bus to school, (do) .... they?



Lesson 1



• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: 6

1 The narrator is ....
(a. Lama – b. Goha – c. the man – d. the boy)

2 The .... is the countryside, many years ago.
(a. narrator – b. setting – c. ending – d. moral)

3 There are .... main characters in the story.
(a. two – b. three – c. four – d. five)

4 The moral is that you can't make people ....
(a. sad – b. angry – c. happy – d. fresh)

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: 8

1 The .... are the people or animals in a story.
a) characters b) setting c) beginning d) ending

2 The story took .... many years ago.
a) part b) turns c) place d) out

3 The last part of a story is the ....
a) moral b) setting c) beginning d) ending

4 The lesson you learn from a story is the ....
a) review b) journey c) moral d) ending

5 The person who tells the story is the ....
a) character b) narrator c) son d) man

6 The time and .... where a story happens is the setting.
a) lesson b) place c) people d) animals

7 The students took .... to answer in the class.
a) lessons b) turns c) place d) from

8 You are right. I .... with you.
a) tell b) know c) write d) agree

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: 4

tired – market – donkey – boy – man

I'm writing a review of one of Goha's stories. The one about a man who goes to the ....(1)............ with his son and a donkey. When the ....(2)............ rides the donkey, people didn't like it. When the man rides the ....(3)..............., people didn't like it. When they both ride the donkey, people say the donkey must be ....(4)............ . So, in the ending, they both carry the donkey!

4 Read the text and answer the questions:



My name is Lama, and I like reading the most. My favorites are Goha's stories. I'm writing a review of one of his stories. He's a great narrator. I love the details he gives about the characters, the setting, and everything that happens. Goha's stories are popular all over the world. But he's known by different names. For example, in Sudan, he's Jawha. In Algeria, he's Jeha, and in Morocco, he's Jha. His stories aren't the same. There are some differences, but they all have a moral that Goha wants to teach us.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 Lama likes .... the most.

a) writing b) reading c) playing d) swimming

2 Lama is writing a review of a/an ....

a) science book b) accident c) story d) adventure

3 The word "moral" means .... from the story.

a) a place b) a lesson c) a character d) a name

B Answer the following questions:

4 Why is Goha a great narrator?

....

5 What are Goha's different names all over the world?

....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:



1 Lama – are – doing, – What – you?

....

2 popular – the world – His stories – all – are – over.

....

3 known – names – different – Goha – by – is.

....

4 are – His – and – clever – funny – stories.

....

6 Punctuate the following:



1 you can t make everyone happy.

....

2 are the stories the same in every country

....







Listen and say: استمع وقل:

Main vocabulary

message	رسالة	bottle	زجاجة (عبوة)	beginning	بداية
trash	قمامة	paper	ورقة	event	حدث

Extra vocabulary

quiet (adj.)	هادئ	beautiful (adj.)	جميل	granddad	جد
idea	فكرة	someone	شخص ما	USA	الولايات المتحدة الأمريكية
space	الفضاء	note	ملحوظة	text message	رسالة نصية
path	ممر	suddenly	فجأة	scared (adj.)	خائف
forest	غابة	newspaper	جريدة	journalist	صحفي

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
fold	يطوى	folded	surf	يركب الأمواج	surfed
email	يراسل (بالإيميل)	emailed	pass	يمر	passed
describe	يصف	described	follow	يتبع	followed

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
write	يكتب	wrote	find	يجد	found
give	يعطى	gave	read	يقرأ	read
tell	يخبر	told	grow up	يكبر	grew up
forget	ينسى	forgot	send	يرسل	sent
shine	يشرق	shone			

Expressions and Phrases

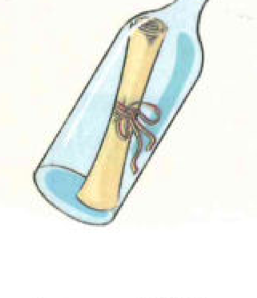
by the sea	بجانب البحر	One day, ...	ذات يوم
a piece of paper	ورقة	throw ... out to sea	يرمى ... فى البحر
back at the house	عودة للمنزل	came in	دخل
the next day	فى اليوم التالى	throw ... into	يرمى ... فى
many years passed	مرت سنوات عديدة	walk his dog	ويمشى كلبه
arrive home	يصل للمنزل	come home	يعود للمنزل
the start of...	البداية لـ ...	hope to see	آمل أن أرى
walk along the path	يمشى إلى جانب الطريق	in the distance	من بعيد
a bit scared	خائف إلى حد ما	score goal	يسجل هدف

Look and read: انظر واقرأ:

Tom's grandparents lived by the sea. The beach near their house was quiet and beautiful, and he loved to go there with them. They swam, surfed, and played games on the sand. One day, they were swimming in the sea when Tom saw a glass bottle in the water. "Look, Granddad," he said. "Let's put it in the trash."
"I have a better idea," said Granddad. "Let's write a message in a bottle."

عاش أجداد توم بجانب البحر. كان الشاطئ بالقرب من منزلهم هادئًا وجميلًا، وكان يحب الذهاب معهم إلى هناك. لقد سبحوا وركبوا الأمواج ولعبوا الألعاب على الرمال.
ذات يوم، كانوا يسبحون فى البحر عندما رأى توم عبوة زجاجية فى الماء. قال: «انظر يا جدى». «دعنا نضعها فى سلة المهملات».
قال الجد: «لدى فكرة أفضل». «دعنا نكتب رسالة فى زجاجة».

"What's a message in a bottle?"
"You write a message on a piece of paper, fold the paper, and put it in the bottle, then throw the bottle out to sea for someone else to find."
Back at the house, Granddad washed the glass bottle and gave Tom a pen and a piece of paper. Tom was writing his message when Grandma came in the room.



"What are you doing, Tom?" asked Grandma.
"I'm writing a message in a bottle," answered Tom. "Do you want to read it?"

ما هى الرسالة فى الزجاجة؟
«تكتب رسالة على ورقة، ثم تطوى الورقة وتضعها فى الزجاجة، ثم ترمى الزجاجة فى البحر ليجدها شخص آخر».
عند عودته إلى المنزل، قام الجد بغسل الزجاجة وأعطى توم قلمًا وورقة. كان توم يكتب رسالته عندما دخلت الجدة إلى الغرفة.
«ماذا تفعل يا توم؟» سألت الجدة.
أجاب توم: «أنا أكتب رسالة فى زجاجة». «هل تريدين قراءتها؟»

Hello!
My name's Tom. I'm 11 years old and I'm from the USA. My favorite things are space, animals, and the color blue.
What are your favorite things? Please email back to tell me! My email address is tom@beachnet.usa
From Tom

مرحبًا!
اسمى توم. عمرى 11 سنة وأنا من الولايات المتحدة الأمريكية. الأشياء المفضلة لدى هى الفضاء والحيوانات واللون الأزرق.
ما هى الأشياء المفضلة لديك؟ برجاء الرد برسالة إلكترونية لتخبرنى! بريدى الإلكترونى هو tom@beachnet.usa
من توم

The next day, Tom and his grandparents went to the beach to throw the bottle into the sea.

وفى اليوم التالى، ذهب توم وأجداده إلى الشاطئ لإلقاء الزجاجة فى البحر.

Many years passed, and Tom grew up. He and his grandparents forgot about the message in a bottle. Then, one day, Tom was working when Granddad sent him a message...

مرت سنوات عديدة، وكبر توم. نسى هو وأجداده الرسالة الموجودة فى الزجاجة. وفى أحد الأيام، كان توم يعمل عندما أرسل له جده رسالة...



Language focus

The Past Continuous Tense زمن الماضى المستمر

We use the past continuous tense in stories to say what was happening at a particular time in the past. نستخدم الماضى المستمر فى القصص لنقول ما كان يحدث فى وقت معين فى الماضى.

Affirmative sentence: الجملة المثبتة:

I/ He/ She/ It/ اسم مفرد	was	+ (inf. مصدر الفعل + ing) ... .
You/ We/ They/ اسم جمع	were	



1 Yesterday afternoon, John was walking his dog.
2 Ola and I were playing computer games yesterday morning.

Negative sentence: الجملة المنفية:

I/ He/ She/ It/ اسم مفرد	wasn't	+ (inf. مصدر الفعل + ing) ... .
You/ We/ They/ اسم جمع	weren't	



1 Amira wasn't reading yesterday evening.
2 They weren't sleeping at 8 yesterday.

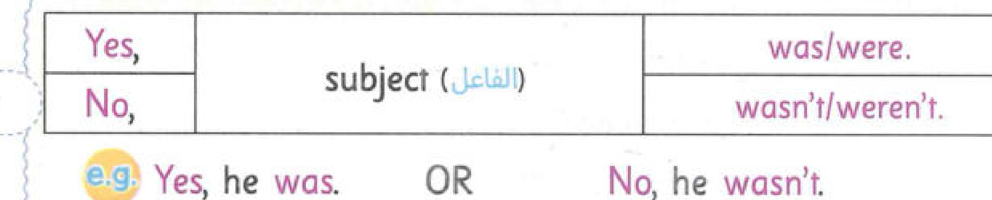
Yes/No Question: السؤال بـ(هل):

Question: السؤال

Was	I/ he/ she/ it/ اسم مفرد	(inf. مصدر الفعل + ing) ... ?
Were	we/ they/ you/ اسم جمع	

e.g. Was Ali studying for his exams last night?

Answer: الإجابة



Yes,	subject (الفاعل)	was/were.
No,		wasn't/weren't.

e.g. Yes, he was. OR No, he wasn't.

e.g.

1 A: Was she writing in her book?
B: Yes, she was.
2 A: Were the children playing football yesterday evening?
B: No, they weren't.

Wh- question: السؤال باستخدام أدوات الاستفهام:

Wh-word كلمة الاستفهام	was / were	subject (الفاعل)	+ (inf. مصدر الفعل + ing)......... ?



1 A: What was she doing at 6 am yesterday?
B: She was having breakfast.

2 A: What were you doing yesterday evening?
B: I was studying.

Key words: الكلمات الدالة

1 all (day/ morning/ evening/ night) yesterday

2 at (6, 7, 8, ... o'clock/ am/ pm) yesterday

Check point

Choose the correct answer:

1 We (are – were – was – is) doing our homework yesterday at 4 o'clock.

2 (Was – Were – Are – Does) she making a sandwich?

3 The dogs (wasn't – isn't – weren't – aren't) sleeping in the garden yesterday evening.

4 I (was cooked – was cooking – cooked – cooks) lunch yesterday at 6 o'clock.

5 We (were – weren't – was – wasn't) playing football yesterday morning. We were studying.

6 They were (makes – making – made – makes) a cake yesterday at 7 o'clock.

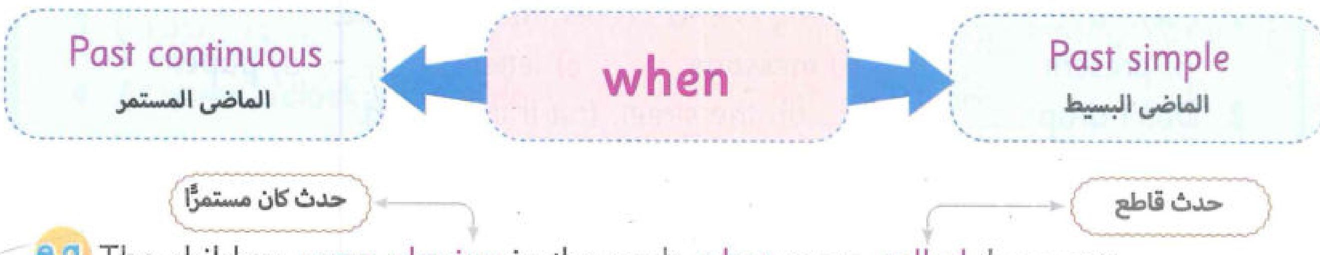
7 What (is – were – was – are) you doing at 9 pm yesterday?

8 She (am – was – is – were) riding her bike yesterday at 11 o'clock.

9 You were playing the piano (yesterday evening – tomorrow morning – next week – next year).

10 A: Were you drinking juice? B: Yes, (you were – I was – she was – was I).

We can also use the past continuous with (when) and the past simple to show when one action interrupted another in the past.
يمكننا أيضًا استخدام الماضى المستمر مع (when) والماضى البسيط لإظهار متى يقاطع حدث ما حدثًا آخر فى الماضى.



حدث كان مستمرًا — حدث قاطع

e.g. The children were playing in the park when mom called them out.



e.g. When my dad came home, I was reading a book.

Check point

Choose the correct answer:

1. When I (comes – coming – came – to come) back from town, mom was cooking lunch.
2. I (took – was taking – is taking – takes) my dog for a walk when suddenly another dog attacked it.
3. (What – When – Where – Which) I was walking in the town, I met an old friend.
4. Fatima was doing her homework when she (gets – got – get – getting) a text message from her friend. SB
5. When the teacher took a photo of us, we (climb – climbs – was climbing – were climbing) up the tree.
6. We (are – were – is – was) eating lunch in the cafeteria at noon.
7. I was (walked – walks – walk – walking) home when I saw the car accident.
8. My classmate and I (was – is – were – are) studying together at the library.
9. A: What (are – were – is – was) you doing at one o'clock? B: I was sleeping.
10. Adham (was – wasn't – were – weren't) doing his homework, he was playing with his friends.
11. What was he (do – does – did – doing) when you visited him?
12. I wasn't watching TV when you (calling – calls – call – called) me. 



Lesson 2



• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: 8

1 I sent a .... to my friend on his mobile phone.
a) present b) message c) letter d) paper

2 Don't drop .... on the street. Put it in the bin.
a) trash b) notes c) event d) home

3 My grandparents lived .... the sea. The beach is near their house.
a) on b) in c) by d) for

4 He wrote the message and .... the bottle out to the sea.
a) followed b) passed c) threw d) emailed

5 He likes to .... when he goes to the sea.
a) describe b) surf c) shine d) run

6 My birthday is a/an .... that happens every year.
a) beginning b) message c) event d) ending

7 Tom was .... his message when grandma came into the room.
a) writes b) writing c) write d) wrote

8 He wrote his teachers' notes on a .... of paper.
a) loaf b) piece c) slice d) bottle

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: 4

idea – trash – paper – bottle – message

One day, Tom was swimming in the sea when he saw a glass bottle in the water. It was a ....(1).......... in a bottle. Granddad had an ....(2).......... to write one. He told Tom how to do it. He writes a message on a piece of ....(3).........., folds the paper and puts it in the bottle. He throws the ....(4).......... out to sea for someone else to find.

3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: 4

1 lived – Tom's – sea – the – by – grandparents.

....

2 beach – beautiful – quiet – The – and – was.

....

3 write – bottle – in – Let's – a – a message.

....

4 the bottle – Tom – the sea – into – threw.

....

4 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets: 14

1. My pet cat (feed) .... her kittens at 6 pm yesterday.
2. Ali (doesn't) .... studying English yesterday morning.
3. (Was) .... Aya and Nour playing in the park yesterday morning?
4. At seven o'clock, Hana (do) .... her homework.
5. Yesterday morning, they were (climb) .... the mountain.
6. Hana (isn't) .... studying at eight last night.
7. What (you were) .... doing yesterday evening?
8. It was my friend's birthday party. We were (sing) .... and dancing.
9. He (run) .... when he fell down.
10. When they (see) .... a dolphin, they were swimming.
11. (What) .... the light went out, he was studying.
12. I was (walk) .... home when I saw Ali.
13. I was doing my homework (where) .... my mom called.
14. I was reading a book when I (was hearing) .... a noise outside.

5 Punctuate the following: 2

1. what is a message in a bottle

....

2. Let s put it in the trash

....

6 Write a text of about FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements: 5

"A day on the beach"

Where were you?	On the beach
What were you doing?	I was walking with my friends.

....

....

....

Study

Lesson 3

(A) The Boy Who Cried a Wolf
الولد الذى أبكى الذئب

Watch a video

Listen and say: استمع وقل:

Main vocabulary

sheep	خروف / خرفان	shepherd	الراعي (راعي الماشية)
villager	قروى	wolf	ذئب

Extra vocabulary

once	ذات مرة	hill	تل
grass	عشب	lonely (adj.)	وحيد
bored (adj)	زهقان	villagers	القرويون
tools	أدوات	joke	مزحة
suddenly	فجأة	real (adj.)	حقيقى
scared (adj)	خائف	untrue (adj.)	غير حقيقى

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعـــال منتظمـة

Present		Past	Present		Past
live	يعيش	lived	rest	يستريح	rested
shout	يصرخ	shouted	wait	ينتظر	waited
save	ينقذ	saved	laugh	يضحك	laughed
reach	يصل إلى	reached	appear	يظهر	appeared

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

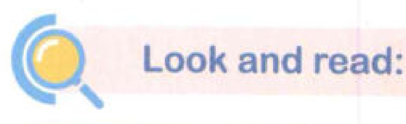
Present		Past	Present		Past
lie	يستلقى	lay	understand	يفهم	understood

Expressions and Phrases

work alone as ...	يعمل بمفرده كـ ...	look after	يعتنى بـ
worry about	يقلق بشأن	put down	يضع أرضًا
tell the truth	يقول الحقيقة	waste time	يضيع الوقت
last day of the week	اليوم الأخير من الأسبوع	He was sorry	كان آسفًا

Vocabulary Check

- يتحول الفعل (lie) بمعنى «يرقد/يستلقى» إلى (lying) عند إضافة الـ (ing).



Look and read: انظر واقرأ:

Once, there was a boy called Peter who lived in a village. He worked alone as a shepherd looking after sheep. Every day, he took the sheep up the hill and rested while the sheep ate the delicious grass.

كان هناك صبى اسمه بيتر يعيش فى إحدى القرى. كان يعمل بمفرده راعيًا يعتنى بالأغنام. كان يأخذ الخراف كل يوم إلى أعلى التل ويستريح بينما تأكل الخراف العشب اللذيذ.

One day, Peter was lying on the grass watching his sheep. He felt lonely and bored and decided to have some fun. First, he shouted, "Wolf! There's a wolf!" to the villagers in the field below: Next, he lay down and waited. The villagers were busy working, but they were worried about Peter's sheep, so they put down their tools and ran to save them.

فى أحد الأيام، كان بيتر مستلقيًا على العشب يراقب خرافه. لقد شعر بالوحدة والملل وقرر الاستمتاع ببعض المرح. أولاً، صرخ : «ذئب»! هناك ذئب!» للقرويين فى الحقل أدناه: بعد ذلك استلقى وانتظر. كان القرويون منشغلين بالعمل، لكنهم كانوا قلقين بشأن خراف بيتر، لذا تركوا أدواتهم وركضوا لإنقاذهما.

They reached the top of the hill, hot and tired. They saw Peter. He was lying under a tree and he was laughing. There is no wolf! It was a joke!" he said. The villagers were very angry and said, "Peter, you must tell the truth!" After that, they left Peter and went back to work.

وصلوا إلى قمة التل حارين ومتعبين. لقد رأوا بيتر. كان يرقد تحت شجرة وكان يضحك: قائلًا «لا يوجد ذئب! لقد كانت مزحة!». فغضب القرويون بشدة وقالوا: «بيتر، يجب أن تقول الحقيقة!» وبعد ذلك تركوا بيتر وعادوا إلى العمل.

Then. Peter did the same thing again later that week. The villagers were very angry, "Peter, you mustn't waste our time! We're very busy!" they said.

ثم فعل بيتر نفس الشيء مرة أخرى فى وقت لاحق من ذلك الأسبوع. كان القرويون غاضبين للغاية، قالوا: «بيتر، لا يجب أن تضيع وقتنا! نحن مشغولون للغاية!»

Finally, on the last day of the week, Peter was with his sheep at the top of the hill when suddenly a real wolf appeared. Peter was very scared and climbed a tree. He called and called for someone to help him. but no one arrived. The wolf killed and ate the sheep. Peter understood why no one came, and he was very sorry.

بالنهاية، فى اليوم الأخير من الأسبوع، كان بيتر مع أغنامه على قمة التل عندما ظهر فجأة ذئب حقيقى. كان بيتر خائفًا جدًا وتسلق شجرة. أخذ ينادى أحدًا لمساعدته. لكن لم يصل أحد. فقتل الذئب الخراف وأكلها. فهم بيتر لماذا لم يأت أحد، وكان آسفًا جدًا.

Check point

1 Who is the main character in the story? 

....

2 Why were the villagers very angry?

....

Moral! الدرس الأخلاقى!

If you tell untrue stories many times, no one will believe you.

إذا رويت قصصًا غير حقيقية عدة مرات، فلن يصدقك أحد.



Language focus

Sequencing adverbs الأحوال التسلسلية

We use sequencing adverbs to say when things happen. They help us to understand the order of events. This makes the text easier to follow.

نحن نستخدم الأحوال التسلسلية لنقول متى تحدث الأشياء. إنها تساعدنا على فهم ترتيب الأحداث. وهذا يجعل النص أسهل للمتابعة.

e.g. First أولًا .... Next التالي... ,





قد تأتى (Next) و (Then) فى الترتيب الثانى مباشرة بعد (First).

e.g.

"The Boy Who Cried a Wolf"

a. Peter was lonely and bored. He wanted some fun. He had an idea.

b. **First,** he shouted, "Wolf"! and the villagers came to help and save the sheep.

c. **Next,** he said there was no wolf and it was a joke.

d. **Then,** Peter did it again.

e. **After that,** the villagers were very angry and said he shouldn't waste their time.

f. **Finally,** a real wolf came. It ate the sheep. Peter was very sorry.

How to write a story using sequencing adverbs:

كيفية كتابة قصة باستخدام الأحوال التسلسلية:

First, plan your story, and decide what it will be about.

أولًا: خطط لقصتك وقرر ما الذى سوف تكتب عنه.

Next, write a first draft of your story.

ثانيًا: اكتب مسودة أولية للقصة.

After that, check and correct your spelling and grammar.

بعد ذلك: راجع وصحح الهجاء والقواعد اللغوية.

Finally, share it with friends and enjoy.

وأخيرًا: شاركها مع الأصدقاء واستمتع.



Pronunciation

Listen, point, and say: استمع، أشر وقل:

water
مياه

whale
حوت

wolf
ذئب

whisper
يهمس

/w/

when متى	walk يمشي
where أين	wave يشاور
what ما/ماذا	west غرب
white أبيض	went ذهب

Stress التشديد

The way in which a part of a word is emphasized more than the other parts while speaking.

الطريقة التي يتم بها التأكيد على نطق جزء من الكلمة أكثر من الأجزاء الأخرى أثناء التحدث.

When a word has a prefix, the prefix usually isn't stressed.

عندما تحتوي الكلمة على بادئة، عادة لا يتم التشديد على البادئة.

If the base word has one syllable, the stress is on the base word.

إذا كانت الكلمة الأساسية تتكون من مقطع واحد، يتم الضغط على الكلمة الأساسية.

- re-*send
- dis-*like
- in-*doors
- un-*hap-py
- re-*play
- in- cor-*rect
- un-*ti-dy
- dis-a-*gree

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: 6

1 Nada loves ....
(a. swimming – b. writing – c. reading – d. playing tennis)

2 Yesterday, Nada read a/an ....
(a. email – b. newspaper – c. English book – d. story)

3 Sami worked as a ....
(a. shepherd – b. farmer – c. vet – d. teacher)

4 Sami always ....
(a. works – b. tells the truth – c. eats – d. lies)

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: 5

1 My father worked as a .... He looks after sheep.

a) doctor b) shepherd c) teacher d) villager

2 It's a funny video, ... it, please.

a) dislike b) untidy c) incorrect d) replay

3 The boy saw a real wolf, so he ....

a) rested b) lived c) waited d) shouted

4 Omar didn't receive my massage. I must .... it.

a) replay b) resend c) dislike d) whisper

5 To make a cup of tea, ... you have to boil the water.

a) next b) finally c) first d) then

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: 4

Then – Next – Finally – First – After that

Here's how to make lemonade. ....(1)............, slice the lemons in half to get the juice out. ....(2)..............., put some water in a jug, and add lemon juice to the water. ....(3)............, add some sugar and stir it. ....(4)............, pour it in a cup, and enjoy your lemonade.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:



My name is Joudy. I'm in grade six. My favorite hobby is reading stories. Yesterday, I read a story about a boy called Peter. Peter worked as a shepherd. On a boring day, he had an idea to have some fun. He shouted, "Wolf"! All the villagers put down their tools and ran to save him. He laughed and said, "It was a joke". The villagers were very angry. One day, a real wolf appeared, and Peter called and called for someone to help, but no one arrived. The wolf ate the sheep. Peter understood why no one came.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 The general idea of the text is about ....

a) a game b) a story c) a book d) leaflet

2 Peter's job is to look after ....

a) children b) students c) sheep d) villagers

3 The underlined word "joke" in the passage means "..............................".

a) It's true b) It's untrue c) It's a lesson d) It's a party

B Answer the following questions:

4 Why were the villagers angry?

....

5 Summarize the moral of the story.

....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:



1 decided – Peter – have – some – to – fun.

....

2 killed – ate – The – and – wolf – the sheep.

....

3 were – villagers – very – The – angry.

....

4 worried about – Peter's – The – were – sheep – villagers.

....

6 Punctuate the following:



peter worked as a shepherd

....



Lessons 4 & 5

Writing & Project



The ending of a story نهاية القصة

Listen and say: استمع وقل:

Main vocabulary

ending	الخاتمة (نهاية القصة)	reply	رد
coast	ساحل	sailing	الإبحار
boat	قارب	excited (adj.)	متشوق

Extra vocabulary

France	فرنسا	Biarritz	بياريتز (اسم مدينة في فرنسا)
mangoes	مانجو	welcome (adj.)	مرحب به
plane	طائرة		

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعــال منتظمـة

Present		Past	Present		Past
believe	يصدق	believed	travel	يسافر	traveled
laugh	يضحك	laughed	reply	يرد	replied

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
forget	ينسى	forgot	find	يجد	found
tell	يخبر	told	feel	يشعر	felt

Expressions and Phrases

decide to	يقرر أن	many years passed	سنوات عديدة مرت
grew up	كبر	forgot about	نسي بخصوص
a reply to	رد على	sailing my boat	الإبحار بقاربي
with best wishes	مع أطيب تمنياتي	a really long way	طريق طويل جدًا
later that evening	في وقت لاحق هذا المساء	That's a great idea!	هذه فكرة عظيمة!
let's go by plane	لنذهب بالطائرة	make sure	يتأكد



Look and read: انظر واقرأ:

Many years passed, and Tom grew up. He and his grandparents forgot about the message in a bottle. Then, one day, Tom was working when Granddad sent him a message.

مرت سنوات عديدة وكبر توم. نسى هو وأجداده الرسالة الموجودة فى الزجاجة. وفى أحد الأيام، كان توم يعمل عندما أرسل له جده رسالة:

Tom, you won't believe it! We have a reply to our message in a bottle!

توم، لن تصدق ذلك! لدينا رد على رسالتك فى زجاجة!

That weekend, Tom went to his grandparents' house. "A woman in France found the message," said Granddad. "Look, here is her reply."

فى نهاية هذا الأسبوع، ذهب توم إلى منزل أجداده. قال الجد: «عثرت امرأة فى فرنسا على الرسالة». «انظر، هنا هو ردها».



New message

From Rose
To Tom

Hello Tom,
My name is Rose and I live in Biarritz, France. I live on the coast and I love sailing my boat. Last week, I was sailing when I saw something in the water—your message in a bottle! This means it traveled over 6,000 kilometers.
I enjoyed reading about your favorite things. My favorite things are my boat, mangoes, and the color green. You are very welcome to come and visit me in France one day!
With best wishes,
Rose

مرحبًا توم،
اسمى روز وأعيش فى بياريتز، فرنسا. أعيش على الساحل وأحب الإبحار بقاربى. فى الأسبوع الماضى، كنت أبحر عندما رأيت شيئًا ما فى الماء - رسالتك فى زجاجة! وهذا يعنى أنها سافرت أكثر من 6000 كيلومتر. لقد استمتعت بالقراءة عن الأشياء المفضلة لديك. أشيائى المفضلة هى القارب والمانجو واللون الأخضر.
مرحبًا بك جدًا للحضور لزيارتى فى فرنسا يومًا ما!
مع أطيب التمنيات،
روز

Send

Tom was very excited. "Wow, our message traveled a really long way!"
Later that evening, Tom was writing something when Granddad came into the room.
"What are you doing, Tom?"
"I'm writing to Rose."
"Why, are you going to visit her?"
"You and I are both going to visit her!"
"That's a great idea," laughed Granddad. "But it's a long way, so let's go by plane!"

كان توم متحمسًا جدًا. «رائع، لقد قطعت رسالتنا مسافة طويلة حقًا!»
فى وقت لاحق من ذلك المساء، كان توم يكتب شيئًا ما عندما دخل جده إلى الغرفة.
«ماذا تفعل يا توم؟»
«أنا أكتب إلى روز».
«لماذا، هل ستزورها؟»
«أنا وأنت سنزورها!»
«هذه فكرة عظيمة،» ضحك الجد. «ولكن الطريق طويل، لذلك دعونا نذهب بالطائرة!»

Tip! A good ending tells you what happens to the characters and how they feel at the end of the story.

النهاية الجيدة تخبرك بما يحدث للشخصيات وما يشعرون به فى نهاية القصة.



Lessons 4 & 5



• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: 6

1. The .... tells you what happens at the end of the story.
   a) beginning b) ending c) character d) moral
2. I need to send a .... to Ahmed's message on email.
   a) present b) book c) bottle d) reply
3. The team was really .... when they won the match.
   a) angry b) worried c) excited d) loud
4. We went on a .... trip on water.
   a) boat b) plane c) bus d) bike
5. You are very .... to come to my birthday party.
   a) long b) far c) funny d) welcome
6. .... a boat is one of my favorite water activities.
   a) Cycling b) Diving c) Swimming d) Sailing

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: 4

reply – Granddad – boat – excited – bottle

Many years passed and Tom grew up. He and his grandparents forgot about the message in a ....(1)............ . Then, one day, Tom was working when ....(2)........... sent him a message telling him that they have got a reply to the message in a bottle. A woman in France found the message and sent a ....(3)............ . Tom was really ....(4)............ and decided to write to the woman to visit her.

3 Read the text and answer the questions: 5

Hello Ali,

My name is Jane and I live in London, England. I live on the coast and I love sailing my boat. Last week, I was sailing when I saw something in the water—your message in a bottle! This means it traveled over 5,435.23 kilometers. I enjoyed reading about your favorite things. My favorite things are my boat, mangoes, and the color green. You are very welcome to come and visit me in England one day! I'm really excited to meet you.

With best wishes,

Jane

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Jane lives on the ....
   a) road b) coast c) beach d) ship

2 .... is sending a message to Ali.

a) Jane b) Ali c) Granddad d) Grandparents

3 Jane found a .... in the water.

a) boat b) coast c) bottle d) ship

B Answer the following questions:

4 Which country does Jane live in?

....

5 How long did the message in a bottle travel?

....

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

4

1 it – over – This – kilometers – 6,000 – traveled – means.

....

2 about – Tom – the message – a bottle – in – forgot.

....

3 me – to – You – welcome – are – visit – very!

....

4 in – A woman – message – the – France – found.

....

5 Punctuate the following:

1

What are you doing, tom

....

6 Write an email of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements:

5

Write an email to your granddad to tell him about your favorite things. Your name is Essam and your email address is essam@school.com. Your granddad's email is granddad@home.com.

From : ....

To : ....

Subject : ....

....

....

....

....

....



Unit 9 REVIEW

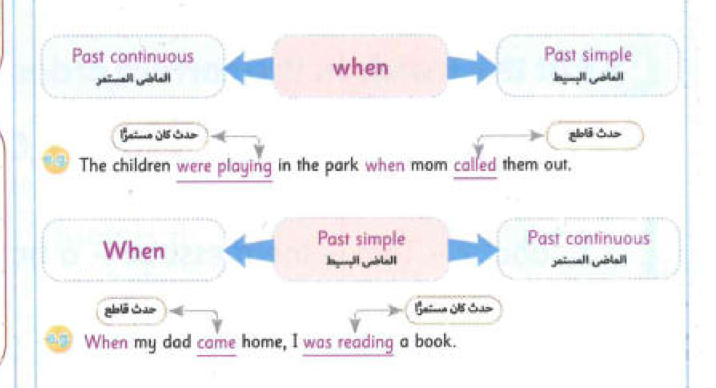
Vocabulary

story	قصة	son	ابن
review	مراجعة	setting	المكان (للقصة)
countryside	الريف	characters	شخصيات
ending	النهاية	narrator	الراوى
moral	العبرة (الدرس الأخلاق)		

donkey	حمار	market	سوق
journey	رحلة	funny (adj.)	مضحك
clever (adj.)	ذكى	popular (adj.)	مشهور
details	تفاصيل	lesson	درس
country	دولة	main (adj.)	رئيسى

Language Focus

We can also use the past continuous with "when" and the past simple to show when one action interrupted another in the past.



Pronunciation

/W/

when – where – what – white – whale – whisper

walk – wave – west – went

Stress التشديد

The way in which a part of a word is emphasized more than the other parts while speaking.

الطريقة التى يتم بها التأكيد على نطق جزء من الكلمة أكثر من الأجزاء الأخرى أثناء التحدث.

When a word has a prefix, the prefix usually isn't stressed.

عندما تحتوى الكلمة على بادئة، عادة لا يتم التشديد على البادئة.

If the base word has one syllable, the stress is on the base word.

إذا كانت الكلمة الأساسية تتكون من مقطع واحد، يتم الضغط على الكلمة الأساسية.

- re-*send
- dis-*like
- in-*doors
- un-*hap-py
- re-*play
- in- cor-*rect
- un-*ti-dy
- dis-a-*gree





Lesson 1

قصة	....	ابن	....
مراجعة	....	شخصيات	....
الريف	....	المكان (القصة)	....
العبرة (الدرس الأخلاقى)	....	الراوى	....
النهاية	....	تفاصيل	....

Lesson 2

بداية	....	زجاجة (عبوة)	....
حدث	....	رسالة	....
قمامة	....	ورقة	....
الأجداد	....	شاطئ	....
هادئ	....	فكرة	....
الفضاء	....	رسالة نصية	....
ممر	....	غابة	....
خائف	....	جميل	....

Lesson 3

خروف / خرفان	....	الراعى (راعى الماشية)	....
قروى	....	ذئب	....
ذات مرة	....	تل	....
عشب	....	وحيد	....
القرويون	....	أدوات	....
مزحة	....	نفس الشىء	....
فجأة	....	حقيقى	....

Lessons 4 & 5

الخاتمة (نهاية القصة)	....	رد	....
ساحل	....	الإبحار	....
قارب	....	متشوق	....
بياريتز (اسم مدينة فى فرنسا)	....	فرنسا	....
طائرة	....	مرحب به	....


تأكد من حفظك لكلمات الدروس قبل البدء فى إجابة اختبار الوحدة.

WRITING TIME



How to write about your favorite story:

- My favorite story is + (اسم القصة).
- The characters are + (أسماء الشخصيات).
- It takes place in + (مكان الأحداث).
- The story is about + (أحداث القصة).
- In the ending, + (أحداث النهاية).

My favorite story is "Goha and the Donkey". The characters are Goha, his son, and the donkey. It took place in the countryside. The story is about the man and his son, who take turns riding the donkey. But people weren't happy with anyone riding the donkey.
In the ending, they both carry the donkey!

How to write a story:

- Where were you?
- Who were you with?
- What time of the day?
- What was the weather like?
- What were you doing?
- What did you find?

My brother Ali and I were on the beach near our grandparents' house. It was early in the morning. The weather was lovely, and the sun was shining. We were swimming in the sea when suddenly we found a glass bottle in the water. There was a piece of paper in the bottle. We took the bottle to our grandparents to open it.

How to write a story using sequencing adverbs:

- First, + (الحدث الأول).
- Next, + (الحدث الثانى).
- Then, + (الحدث الذى يليه).
- After that, + (الحدث الذى يليه).
- Finally, + (الحدث الأخير).

Peter was lonely and bored. He wanted some fun. He had an idea. First, he shouted, "Wolf"! and the villagers came to help and save the sheep. Next, he said there was no wolf and it was a joke. Then, Peter did it again. After that, the villagers were very angry and said he shouldn't waste their time. Finally, a real wolf came. It ate the sheep. Peter was very sorry.

لكى تتمكن من كتابة الموضوعات بشكل مميز، اتبع هذه الخطوات.

Unit 9 STUDENT'S BOOK CORNER

1 Complete the sentences with the words from the box:

character – ending – moral – narrator – setting

1. The .... of the story is kindness is everything.
2. The main .... was a bit boring – I didn't like him.
3. The .... is the person who tells you the story.
4. In the ...., we find out why he was sad.
5. The .... is London in 1965.

2 Complete the sentences with the past continuous or past simple form of the verbs in brackets:

1. Fatima (do) .... her homework when she (get) .... a text message from her friend.
2. Ghada and I (play) .... computer games when her brother (arrive).............................. home.
3. I (not watch) .... TV when you (call) .... me.
4. .... you (look) .... at your phone when I (see).............................. you in the street?

3 Write sentences using the words, the past continuous and the past simple:

1. he/ play/ when/ his mom/ arrive home ....
2. we/ travel/ to the city/ when/ Grandma/ call us ....
3. they/ listen/ to music/ when/ the man/ shout ....
4. you/ study for your exam/ when/ the car/ stop/ outside ....

Test Yourself 30 UNIT 9





Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: 6

1. My favorite story is "Goha and the ....".
   (a. Horse – b. Goat – c. Donkey – d. Camel)
2. It took place in the ....
   (a. desert – b. sea – c. forest – d. countryside)
3. The characters are Goha, his ...., and the donkey.
   (a. friend – b. son – c. daughter – d. wife)
4. People weren't .... with anyone riding the donkey.
   (a. happy – b. excited – c. sad – d. right)

Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: 4

1. The .... is the last part of the story.
   a) beginning b) ending c) setting d) event
2. The person who tells the story is called the ....
   a) narrator b) character c) review d) countryside
3. The ....from the story is that you can't make everyone happy.
   a) event b) moral c) journey d) details
4. When you write to someone on a piece of paper, you are writing a/an ....
   a) message b) bottle c) path d) idea

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: 4

forest – path – sun – hungry – moon

My friend Ali and I were playing in the ....(1)............... yesterday. It was a lovely afternoon and the ....(2)................. was shining. We were near my home, and we were hoping to see some interesting animals and birds. We were walking along the ....(3)............ when we saw a little dog. It was ....(4)............ and sick. We decided to help it and take it home.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: 5

One day, Tom was swimming in the sea when he saw a glass bottle in the water. He thought it was trash and wanted to throw it in the bin. But Granddad told him it was a message in a bottle. Granddad started to teach Tom how to write a message in a bottle. First, he writes a message on a piece of paper. Next, he folds the paper and puts it in the bottle. After that, you throw the bottle out to sea for someone else to find. Tom was happy and decided to write one.

A **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:**

1. The main idea of the passage is ....
   a) Tom b) Granddad c) the sea d) the message in a bottle
2. Tom was .... in the ending.
   a) afraid b) worried c) angry d) happy
3. The word "one" refers to the ....
   a) bottle b) message c) paper d) trash

B **Answer the following questions:**

4. What did Tom find in the water?

   ....

5. How to write a message in a bottle?

   ....

Writing

5 **Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:** (3)

1. went to – Last week, – house – grandparents' – his – Tom.

   ....

2. the stories – Are – country – in – every – the same?

   ....

3. Geha – in – Goha – known – Sudan – as – is

   ....

6 **Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:** (2)

1. I was walking home when I (meet) .... Ali.
2. What (did) .... you doing yesterday afternoon?

7 **Punctuate the following:** (1)

youssef's dad is sending the message ....

8 **Write a text of about FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements:** (5)

"The message in a bottle"

What is a message in a bottle? – How do you write it?

....

....

....

Assess your progress ★★★★★

< 50%	50 : 64%	65 : 84%	85 : 100%
Study again	Practice more	Solve more exams	Well done!

Unit 9 AL-AZHAR CORNER



1 Read and complete the dialog:

son – countryside – review – setting – characters

Mom : What are you doing, Lama?

Lama : I'm writing a .... of the story "Goha and his Donkey"?

Mom : What is the .... of the story?

Lama : It takes place in the ....

Mom : Who are the ....?

Lama : They are Goha, his ...., and the donkey.

2 Read and circle the odd one out:

1. market – countryside – village – walk (..............................)
2. Sudan – Morocco – Algeria – journey (..............................)
3. When – were – Where – What (..............................)
4. setting – character – moral – funny (..............................)
5. write – find – travel – bottle (..............................)

3 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

1. son – the market – Goha – his – to – and – went.

   ....

2. known – Goha – as – in – Jawha – is – Algeria.

   ....

3. can't – everyone – make – You – happy.

   ....

4. quiet – beautiful – was – and – The beach.

   ....

5. things – What – favorite – your – are?

   ....

MARCH MONTHLY TEST







Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: (6)

1. Jane's grandparents lived by the ....
   (a. sea – b. lake – c. river – d. mountain)
2. The beach near their house was .... and beautiful.
   (a. busy – b. quiet – c. loud – d. crowded)
3. When Jane was visiting her grandparents, she suggested going to the ....
   (a. park – b. club – c. library – d. beach)
4. Jane found a .... with a message inside it.
   (a. boat – b. box – c. bottle – d. bag)

Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: (4)

1. The country controlled money and produced goods through a system called ....
   a) weapons b) trade c) metals d) economy
2. You need to draw some squares to play ....
   a) hide and seek b) hopscotch c) skipping d) running
3. The .... of a story is what the narrator wants to teach us.
   a) setting b) characters c) ending d) moral
4. I love playing with .... They are small balls, that can go really fast.
   a) board games b) skateboard c) marbles d) cuddly toy

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: (4)

figures – imagination – rollerblades – stickers – making

When Youssef was younger, his favorite toy was the doll's house. He loved taking it to the garden of the house and playing with it for a long time. It was big and blue with yellow ....(1).................. all over it. Youssef liked games where he can use his ....(2)............... . That's why he enjoyed playing with his action ....(3).............. . He was really good at ....(4).............. up new games for them all the time.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: (5)



Good morning and welcome to the Museum of Ancient History. I'm Mr Tarek and I will be your guide today. As you can see around you, we have many artifacts that belong to the Ancient Egyptians. One reason is the climate. Here in Egypt, we have a hot, dry climate that helps preserve the artifacts in good condition. On your right, you can see the mask of Tutankhamun. It's made of pure gold with blue lines between gold

lines. Ancient Egyptians liked using gold, not only because it is valuable, but also because it is durable.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 Mr Tarek is our .... today.
a) teacher b) coach c) guide d) trainer

2 The .... in Egypt kept the artifacts in good condition.
a) climate b) people c) Nile d) gold

3 The underlined pronoun "it" refers to ....
a) Tutankhamun's mask b) climate c) gold d) the museum

B Answer the following questions:

4 Describe the mask of Tutankhamun. ....

5 Why did the Ancient Egyptians like using gold? ....

Writing

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: (3)

1 Nadia – What – you – doing – were – night, – last?

....

2 enjoyed – Omar – playing – outside – games.

....

3 Egyptians – traded – other – Ancient – with – countries.

....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets: (2)

1 Rania and Huda are very good at (hide) ....

2 When we were playing, we (find) .... an old metal box.

7 Punctuate the following: (1)

did you like playing board games, ola?

....

8 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements: (5)

"What I found on the beach"

What did you find on the beach?
To whom are you writing the message?

....
....
....
....



Review 3

Lessons 2 & 3

What's your favorite story?

ما هى قصتك المفضلة؟



Look and read:

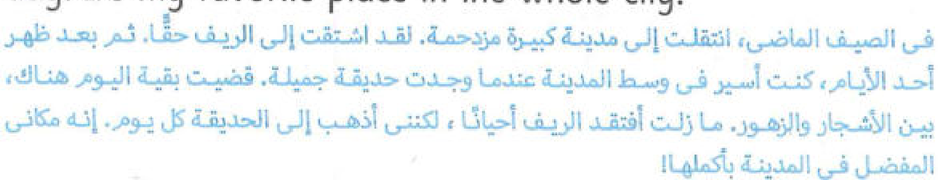
انظر واقرأ:

Nadia went to the shops with her friends. They bought some clothes, some jewelry, and some snacks. Then, they passed a toy shop. In the window of the toy shop was a cuddly toy. "Oh, look!" said Nadia. "Last time I came here, I was with my sister. She loved this cuddly toy. I'm going to buy it for her".

ذهبت نادية إلى المتاجر مع صديقاتها. اشتروا بعض الملابس وبعض المجوهرات وبعض الوجبات الخفيفة. ثم مروا بمتجر لعب. فى نافذة متجر الألعاب كان هناك دمية عناق. «أوه، انظروا!» قالت نادية: «آخر مرة أتيت فيها إلى هنا ، كنت مع أختى. لقد أحبت هذه اللعبة. أنا سوف اشتريها لها.



Last summer, I moved to a big, busy city. I really missed the countryside. Then, one afternoon, I was walking through the middle of the city when I found a beautiful park. I spent the rest of the day there, among the trees and the flowers. I still miss the countryside sometimes, but I go to the park every day. It's my favorite place in the whole city!



فى الصيف الماضى، انتقلت إلى مدينة كبيرة مزدحمة. لقد اشتقت إلى الريف حقًا. ثم بعد ظهر أحد الأيام، كنت أسير فى وسط المدينة عندما وجدت حديقة جميلة. قضيت بقية اليوم هناك، بين الأشجار والزهور. ما زلت أفتقد الريف أحيانًا ، لكننى أذهب إلى الحديقة كل يوم. إنه مكانى المفضل فى المدينة بأكملها!



One day, a little monkey was feeling bored. He climbed to the top of the tallest tree and looked around. Nearby, some other little monkeys were playing a game. "Come and play with us!" they shouted. But the little monkey felt shy. Slowly, he went closer. And slowly, he felt braver. Before long, the little monkey felt happy. It was good to have fun!

فى أحد الأيام، كان قرد صغير يشعر بالملل. صعد إلى قمة أطول شجرة ونظر حوله. فى مكان قريب، كانت بعض القرود الصغيرة الأخرى تلعب لعبة. «تعال والعب معنا!» صاح القرود. لكن القرد الصغير شعر بالخجل. ببطء ، اقترب. وببطء ، شعر بشجاعة. قبل فترة طويلة ، شعر القرد الصغير بالسعادة. كان من الجيد أن يحظى ببعض المتعة.



When I was a boy, I liked to go to the beach with my grandfather. We used his metal detector to find interesting things in the sand. One time, we found a small, metal box. "Treasure!" I said. My grandfather laughed. "Go on, then," he said. "What's inside?" I opened the box. Inside, there was a very special kind of treasure. It was a letter. A very old letter...



عندما كنت صبيًا، أحببت الذهاب إلى الشاطئ مع جدى. استخدمنا جهاز الكشف عن المعادن الخاص به للعثور على أشياء مثيرة للاهتمام فى الرمال. ذات مرة ، وجدنا صندوقًا معدنيًا صغيرًا. «الكنز!» قلت. ضحك جدى. قال:«استمر ، إذن». «ماذا يوجد فى الداخل؟» فتحت الصندوق. فى الداخل، كان هناك كنز من نوع خاص جدًا. لقد كانت رسالة. رسالة قديمة جدًا ...

Extra vocabulary

jewelry	مجوهرات	snack	وجبة خفيفة
pass	يمر على	miss	يشتاق إلى / يفتقد
the countryside	الريف	walk through	يمشى خلال
feel bored	يشعر بالملل	climb	يتسلق
nearby (adj.)	قريب	shout	يصيح
shy (adj.)	خجول	braver (adj.)	أشجع
metal detector	كاشف معادن	treasure	كنز
laugh	يضحك		

Our museum visit زيارتنا إلى المتحف

BLOG HOME ABOUT ME LINKS ARCHIVE

By Dalia كتبه داليا

Last summer, we went to a museum in the city. There were so many interesting artifacts to see. My brother and I were walking when we found a room that had lots of animal statues. The Ancient Egyptians made lots of animal statues, because animals were very important in their culture. First, we saw different statues in gold and silver. Then we saw some in clay, stone, and granite, too.

My favorite was a small snake made of metal. My brother liked a gold falcon with blue glass eyes. There were lots of cats made of brightly colored stone, too. The Ancient Egyptians adored cats. They believed that cats kept them safe.

فى الصيف الماضى ، ذهبنا إلى متحف فى المدينة. كان هناك الكثير من القطع الأثرية المثيرة للاهتمام لرؤيتها. كنت أنا وأخى نسير عندما وجدنا غرفة بها الكثير من التماثيل على شكل حيوانات . صنع المصريون القدماء الكثير من التماثيل على شكل حيوانات، لأن الحيوانات كانت مهمة جدا فى ثقافتهم. أولاً، رأينا تماثيل مختلفة من الذهب والفضة. ثم رأينا البعض من الطين والحجر والجرانيت أيضا.

كان المفضل لدى ثعبان صغير مصنوع من المعدن. أحب أخى صقرا ذهبيا بعيون زجاجية زرقاء. كان هناك الكثير من القطط المصنوعة من الحجر ذات الألوان الزاهية، ايضا . كان المصريون القدماء يعشقون القطط. كانوا يعتقدون أن القطط أبقتهم آمنين.



Myself and others

نفسي والآخرون







Unit 10

Free as a bird

حر كالطير



Unit Overview

Student's Book Exercises  Al-Azhar  Answers 100% 

- By the end of this unit, the student will be able to: — بنهاية هذه الوحدة، سيكون التلميذ قادرًا على أن:

- listen, read, research, and write about bird and animal proverbs. — يستمع، يقرأ، يبحث، ويكتب عن الأمثال الخاصة بالطيور والحيوانات.
- listen to and understand a presentation about eco-tourism in Egypt. — يستمع ويفهم عرضًا تقديميًا عن السياحة البيئية في مصر.
- read and learn about eco-tourism and wildlife. — يقرأ و يتعلم عن السياحة البيئية والحياة البرية.
- use "must/mustn't" to talk about something we have to do. — يستخدم «يجب أن/ لا يجب أن» ليتحدث عن شئ يجب علينا فعله.
- use the first conditional to talk about things that are likely to happen in the future. — يستخدم الحالة الشرطية الأولى للتعبير عن أشياء محتمل حدوثها في المستقبل.
- read advertisements for eco-tourism vacations in Egypt. — يقرأ إعلانات إجازات السياحة البيئية في مصر.
- read and learn about bird migration. — يقرأ ويتعلم عن هجرة الطيور.
- say words with two or three syllables. — يقول كلمات من مقطعين أو ثلاثة مقاطع.
- read and write a blog about animal habitats. — يقرأ ويكتب مدونة عن أماكن معيشة الحيوانات.
- create an information leaflet about the Nile Delta. — يصمم نشرة معلوماتية عن دلتا النيل.

Did you know?

- The biggest bird in the world is the *ostrich. It can be 210 cm long. It can run fast, but it can't fly! The smallest bird is the *bee hummingbird. It's about 5.5 cm long.

I can find it out!

- Steppe eagle is the national bird of Egypt and it is the *symbol included on the Egyptian flag. They are very proud birds. Steppe eagles do not eat *dead prey but only fresh kills.

*ostrich	نعامة	* bee hummingbird	النحل الطنان	*steppe eagle	نسر السهوب
* symbol	رمز	* dead prey	فريسة ميتة		



Lesson 1

Birds of a Feather





Listen and say: استمع وقل

Main vocabulary

proverbs	أمثال	successful (adj.)	ناجح	similar (adj.)	مشابه
careful (adj.)	مهتم / حريص	real (adj.)	حقيقي	sensible (adj.)	منطقي

Extra vocabulary

feathers	ريش	description	وصف	well-known (adj.)	معروف
true (adj.)	حقيقي	exactly	بالضبط	exact (adj.)	دقيق
meaning	معنى	worm	دودة	strange (adj.)	غريب
nest	عش	plans	خطط	carefully	بحرص

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
suggest	يقترح	suggested	need	يحتاج	needed
flock	يجتمع	flocked	mention	يذكر	mentioned
count	يعد	counted	hatch	يفقس	hatched
dare	يجرؤ	dared	succeed	ينجح	succeeded

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
mean	يعني	meant	catch	يمسك	caught
know	يعرف	knew	become	يصبح	became
fall	يسقط	fell	learn	يتعلم	learnt
understand	يفهم	understood	think	يعتقد	thought

Expressions and Phrases

generally true	بشكل عام حقيقي	scientific fact	حقيقة علمية
as well as	بالإضافة إلى	more than	أكثر من
How about ...?	ماذا عن ...؟	flock together	يجتمعون سويا
look the same	يبدو مثل بعض	too many plans	الكثير من الخطط
seem scary	تبدو مخيفة	well done	أحسنت
You're getting the idea!	أنت تفهم الفكرة!	make mistakes	يرتكب أخطاء

Definitions

proverb	A proverb is a well-known phrase about something which is generally true. المثل عبارة معروفة عن شيء صحيح بشكل عام. A proverb has another meaning as well as its exact meaning. المثل له معنى آخر بالإضافة إلى معناه الدقيق.
successful	Someone who is successful tries to do something, and does it. الشخص الناجح يحاول أن يفعل شيئًا ما، و يفعله.
similar	When two things are similar, they might look the same or do the same things. عندما يكون هناك شيئان متشابهان، فإنهما قد يبدوان بنفس الشكل أو يفعلان نفس الأشياء.
real	If something is real, it happens and it's true. إذا كان شيء ما حقيقى، فإنه يحدث، وهو حقيقة.
sensible	If something is sensible, it's a good idea that someone has thought about carefully. إذا كان هناك شيء ما منطقى، فإنه فكرة جيدة فكر بها شخص ما بدقة وحرص.
careful	A careful person tries hard not to make mistakes. الشخص الحريص يحاول جاهدا عدم ارتكاب الأخطاء.

Proverbs

- "The early bird catches the worm." «الطائر المبكر يصطاد الدودة»
وتعنى أن الشخص الذى يبدأ بالعمل باكرا يكون الأكثر نجاحا.
- "Birds of a feather flock together." « الطيور على أشكالها تقع»
وتعنى أن الأشخاص المماثلين يحبون القيام بنفس الأشياء.
- "Don't count your chickens before they hatch." «لا تعد دجاجك قبل أن يفقس»
وتعنى ألا تعتمد على شيء لم يحدث بعد.
- "The bird who dares to fall is the bird who learns to fly."
«الطائر الذى يجرؤ على السقوط هو الطائر الذى يتعلم الطيران»
تعنى أن الشخص الذى يتجاوز مخاوفه وتحدياته هو الذى ينجح.
- "Even an eagle will not fly higher than sun." «حتى النسر لن يطير أعلى من الشمس»
وتعنى أن هناك حدودًا لكل شيء حتى الشخص والكائنات القوية لن تستطيع تجاوز تلك الحدود.
- "Singing birds don't build nests." «الطيور التى تغنى لا تبنى أعشاشًا»
تعنى أن الشخص الذى يتكلم كثيرا لا يقوم بعمل المهام الأساسية المطلوبة منه.
- "It is not only fine feathers which make fine birds." «ليس فقط الريش الجميل هو الذى يجعل الطيور جميلة»
وتعنى أنه لا يجب أن نحكم على الشخص بناء على الجمال الخارجي، ولكن من خلال ما يمتلك من صفات وقيم جميلة.

Check point

Choose the correct answer:

1. It's a beautiful bird, it has long wings with colorful (skin – feathers – fur – hair).
2. He always gets high marks, he is very (sensible – similar – successful – real)
3. My T-shirt and yours look the same, they are very (same – strong – some – similar).
4. When something happens and it's true, this means it's (real – large – strange – description).
5. The early bird (hatches – needs – catches – knows) the worm.
6. Singing birds don't (want – mention – fly – build) nests.



Listen, read, and role-play: استمع، اقرأ وتبادل الأدوار:



Malak

Injy, what does this proverb mean? "The early bird catches the worm."

إنجى، ماذا يعنى هذا المثل؟ «الطائر المبكر يصطاد الدودة».



Injy

Well, proverbs have more than one meaning. This proverb tells us that a bird that is early, or the first to try to catch a worm, usually catches it. So, it also means that to be successful, you need to be the first to do something.

حسنًا، الأمثال لها أكثر من معنى. يخبرنا هذا المثل أن الطائر الذى يكون مبكرًا، أو أول من يحاول اصطياد الدودة، عادة ما يصطادها. لذا، فهذا يعنى أيضًا أنه لكى تكون ناجحًا، عليك أن تكون أول من يفعل شيئًا ما.



Malak

How about this one? "Birds of a feather flock together".

ماذا عن هذا؟ «الطيور على أشكالها تقع».



Injy

If they flock together, that means they stay in a large group. And maybe it mentions feathers because they all have similar feathers.

إذا تجمعوا معًا، فهذا يعنى أنهم يبقون فى مجموعة كبيرة. وربما يذكر الريش لأن جميعها لها ريش متشابه.



Malak

You mean they all look the same?

هل تقصدين أنهم جميعًا يبدون نفس الشىء؟



Yes. But here, it means that similar people like doing the same things.

نعم. ولكن هنا يعنى أن الأشخاص المماثلين يحبون القيام بنفس الأشياء.



Okay, here's a strange one! "Don't count your chickens before they hatch."

حسنا، هنا مثل آخر غريب! «لا تعد دجاجك قبل أن يفقس».



Well, you might have four eggs in a nest, but you don't really know how many will become chickens. So maybe it's about being careful before you know something will happen.

حسنًا، قد يكون لديك أربع بيضات فى العش، لكنك لا تعرف حقًا أن العديد منها سيصبح دجاجًا. لذلك ربما يتعلق الأمر بالحذر قبل أن تعرف أن شيئًا ما سيحدث.



So you don't make too many plans before something is real. That's sensible. How about this proverb? "The bird who dares to fall is the bird who learns to fly." Do you think that means you have to try something that seems scary if you want to succeed?

لذلك لا تضع الكثير من الخطط قبل أن يصبح الأمر حقيقيًا. هذا معقول. ماذا عن هذا المثل؟ «الطائر الذى يجرؤ على السقوط هو الطائر الذى يتعلم الطيران.» هل تعتقد أن هذا يعنى أنه عليك تجربة شيء يبدو مخيفًا إذا كنت تريد النجاح؟



Yes, I do. Well done, Malak! You're getting the idea!

نعم أفعل. أحسنتِ يا ملاك! لقد وصلت الفكرة!







• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:



1. Salma read a book about ....
   (a. birds – b. worm – c. proverbs – d. animals)
2. Proverbs have more than one ....
   (a. word – b. meaning – c. verb – d. sentence)
3. "The early bird catches the ...."
   (a. worm – b. food – c. ant – d. book)
4. To be successful, you need to be the .... to do something.
   (a. last – b. second – c. third – d. first)

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:



1. "......................" means a good idea that someone has thought about carefully.
   a) Strange b) Successful c) Sensible d) Similar
2. "Don't count your .... before they hatch."
   a) worms b) birds c) chickens d) feathers
3. A/An "...................." is a well-known phrase about something which is generally true.
   a) verb b) noun c) adjective d) proverb
4. "Birds of a feather .... together."
   a) sing b) dare c) hatch d) flock

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:



meaning – true – dares – scary – sings

Proverbs are amazing. A proverb is a well-known phrase about something which is generally ....(1)............ . Proverbs have more than one ....(2)............ . For example, this proverb "The bird who ....(3).............. to fall is the bird who learns to fly." It means you have to try something that seems ....(4)............ if you want to succeed.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

5

My name is Lama. I'm in grade six. I love reading very much. Yesterday, I read a book about proverbs. It was very interesting. Proverbs usually have another meaning as well as its exact meaning. For example, this proverb, "Birds of a feather flock together" means that similar people like doing the same things. But it mentions feathers to show that they are all similar in something. Another proverb is "Singing birds don't build nests". It means that the person who talks a lot doesn't have time to do his work.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The general idea of the text is about "..............................".
   a) Proverbs b) Lama's school
   c) Lama's family d) Lama's hobbies
2. The proverb mentions "...................." to show that birds are similar in something.
   a) tails b) wings c) feathers d) eyes
3. The underlined verb "flock together" means ....
   a) count b) dare c) hatch d) fly

B Answer the following questions:

4. What does Lama love doing very much?

   ....

5. What does this proverb mean "Singing birds don't build nests"?

   ....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: 4

1. flock – of – Birds – together – a feather.

   ....

2. make – before – something – Don't – plans – real – is.

   ....

3. count – before – your – Don't – chickens – hatch – they.

   ....

4. don't – Singing – birds – nests – build.

   ....

6 Punctuate the following: 2

1. even an eagle will not fly higher than the sun

   ....

2. It s not only fine feathers which make fine birds

   ....



Lesson 2





A Eco-tourism in Egypt

السياحة البيئية فى مصر



Listen and say: استمع وقل:

Main vocabulary

eco-tourism	السياحة البيئية	sustainable (adj.)	مستمر
simple (adj.)	بسيط	accommodation	سكن
ideal (adj.)	مثالى	habitat	مسكن / بيئة طبيعية

Extra vocabulary

tourists	سياح	historical (adj.)	تاريخى	desert safari	رحلة سفارى فى الصحراء
popular (adj.)	مشهور	traditional (adj.)	تقليدى	nature	الطبيعة
pollution	التلوث	long distance	مسافة طويلة	journeys	رحلات
species	أنواع/ فصائل	fantastic (adj.)	رائع	photographs	صور فوتوغرافية
environment	البيئة	excellent (adj.)	ممتاز	hiking	التنزه
tent	خيمة	tour	جولة سياحية	meals	وجبات
chance	فرصة	coral reefs	الشعاب المرجانية	trips	رحلات

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعـــال منتظمـة

Present		Past	Present		Past
snorkel	يغطس	snorkeled	climb	يتسلق	climbed
sail	يبحر	sailed	damage	يدمر	damaged
protect	يحمى	protected	cause	يسبب	caused
migrate	يهاجر	migrated	respect	يحترم	respected
camp	يخيم/ يعسكر	camped	scare	يخيف	scared

Irregular verbs أفعـــال غير منتظمـة

Present		Past	Present		Past
find	يجد	found	hurt	يجرح/ يؤذى	hurt
bring	يحضر	brought	go down	تغرب (الشمس)	went down

Expressions and Phrases

as well as	بالإضافة إلى	go snorkeling	يذهب للغطس
sail on the Nile	يبحر فى النيل	it's designed to	مصممة لـ ...
bird and wildlife watching	مشاهدة الطيور والحياة البرية	at certain times of year	فى أوقات محددة من العام
warmer weather	طقس أكثر دفئًا	go over Egypt	تتحرك فوق مصر
on vacations to ...	فى إجازات لكى ...	migrating water birds	الطيور المائية المهاجرة
get too close to	يقترب جدًّا من	fly away	يطير بعيدًا
desert sunsets	غروب الشمس فى الصحراء	along the river	على امتداد النهر
underwater photography	التصوير تحت الماء	set off on a tour	ينطلق فى رحلة
bright-colored fish	الأسماك ذات الألوان الزاهية	protected area	منطقة محمية
travel along the river	يسافر بطول النهر	under the stars	أسفل النجوم
cooking outdoors	الطبخ فى الهواء الطلق	look after ...	يعتنى بـ ...

Definitions

respect	like something and want to look after it	أن تحب شيئا ما وتريد الاعتناء به
sustainable	do something in a way that doesn't damage the environment	فعل شىء ما بطريقة لا تضر البيئة
simple	living in a place where you have what you need, and nothing more	العيش فى مكان به ما تحتاج إليه، لا شىء أكثر.
accommodation	This is somewhere you stay.	المكان الذى تقيم فيه
ideal	perfect or excellent	رائع أو ممتاز

Vocabulary Check

journey: رحلة طويلة — e.g. The birds often must fly very long distances, and lots of their **journeys** go over Egypt.

trip: رحلة قصيرة — e.g. This is a protected area, so there mustn't be too many **trips**.

tour: جولة (زيارة عدة أماكن خلال نفس الرحلة) — e.g. We're going on a **tour** to see the birds and animals which live near the water. We'll travel along the river.

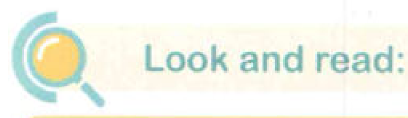
Remember

"Eco-" is related to the environment or environment friendly.

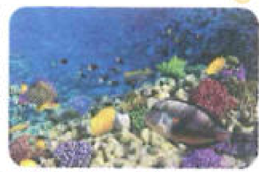
المقطع "eco" يعود دائمًا على البيئة أو يعنى صديق للبيئة.

Important sentences جمل هامة

- There are many historical places to visit in Egypt.
- يوجد العديد من الأماكن التاريخية التى يمكن زيارتها فى مصر.
- Eco-tourism is a way of traveling that doesn't damage the environment, and becomes very popular now.
- السياحة البيئية هى طريقة سفر لا تدمر البيئة، وأصبحت مشهورة الآن.
- Many people are starting to visit Egypt for birds and wildlife watching.
- العديد من الأشخاص يبدءون فى زيارة مصر لمشاهدة الطيور والحياة البرية.
- There are over 450 species of birds in Egypt.
- يوجد أكثر من ٤٥٠ نوعًا من الطيور فى مصر.
- Wildlife watching is ideal for people who respect nature.
- مشاهدة الحياة البرية مثالية للأشخاص الذين يحترمون الطبيعة.



Look and read: انظر واقرأ:



Egypt is an amazing country. There are many historical places to visit, as well as stores, markets, and museums. People can go snorkeling in the Red Sea, go on a desert safari, climb mountains, or sail on the Nile. So, tourism is important – but eco-tourism is becoming very popular, too.

مصر بلد رائع. هناك العديد من الأماكن التاريخية التى يمكنك زيارتها، بالإضافة إلى المتاجر والأسواق والمتاحف. يمكن للناس ممارسة الغطس فى البحر الأحمر، أو الذهاب فى رحلة سفارى صحراوية، أو تسلق الجبال، أو الإبحار فى نهر النيل. لذا، فإن السياحة مهمة - ولكن السياحة البيئية أصبحت ذات شعبية كبيرة أيضًا.

Eco-tourism is a way of traveling that doesn't damage the environment. It's more sustainable than traditional tourism, and it is designed to protect nature. People stay in simple accommodation, not large hotels, and they mustn't travel in ways that cause lots of pollution.

السياحة البيئية هى وسيلة سفر لا تضر بالبيئة. إنها أكثر استدامة من السياحة التقليدية، وهى مصممة لحماية الطبيعة. يقيم الناس فى أماكن إقامة بسيطة، وليس فى فنادق كبيرة، ويجب ألا يسافروا بطرق تسبب الكثير من التلوث.

Many people are starting to visit Egypt for bird and wildlife watching. There are lots of interesting birds to see here. Many kinds of birds migrate – they must fly to different countries at certain times of year, to find food, make nests, or have warmer weather. The birds often must fly very long distances, and lots of their journeys go over Egypt, because it is in North Africa and close to Asia and Europe.

بدأ الكثير من الناس زيارة مصر لمشاهدة الطيور والحياة البرية. هناك الكثير من الطيور المثيرة للاهتمام التى يمكنك رؤيتها هنا. تهاجر أنواع كثيرة من الطيور - يجب أن تطير إلى بلدان مختلفة فى أوقات معينة من السنة، للعثور على الطعام، أو بناء أعشاش، أو الاستمتاع بطقس أكثر دفئًا. فى كثير من الأحيان يجب أن تطير الطيور لمسافات طويلة جدًا، وكثير من رحلاتها تمر فوق مصر، لأنها تقع فى شمال إفريقيا وقريبة من آسيا وأوروبا.

There are over 450 species of birds in Egypt, and people come from all over the world on vacations to see them. For example, Siwa Oasis is a fantastic place to see many migrating water birds. It is an important habitat and people must protect it.

يوجد فى مصر أكثر من 450 نوعًا من الطيور، ويأتى الناس من جميع أنحاء العالم فى الإجازات لرؤيتها. على سبيل المثال، تعد واحة سيوة مكانًا رائعًا لمشاهدة العديد من الطيور المائية المهاجرة. إنه موطن مهم ويجب على الناس حمايته.

People who go bird watching in Egypt will have a lot to see. They mustn't get too close to the birds, because they might fly away, but they can watch from a safe distance and take lots of photographs.

سيكون لدى الأشخاص الذين يذهبون لمشاهدة الطيور فى مصر الكثير مما يمكنهم رؤيته. يجب ألا يقتربوا كثيرًا من الطيور، لأنها قد تطير بعيدًا، لكن يمكنهم المشاهدة من مسافة آمنة والتقاط الكثير من الصور.

Wildlife watching is ideal for people who respect nature, and eco-tourism is a good way for people to do this.

تعتبر مشاهدة الحياة البرية مثالية للأشخاص الذين يحترمون الطبيعة، وتعد السياحة البيئية وسيلة جيدة للأشخاص للقيام بذلك.

Check point

1 What is eco-tourism? SB

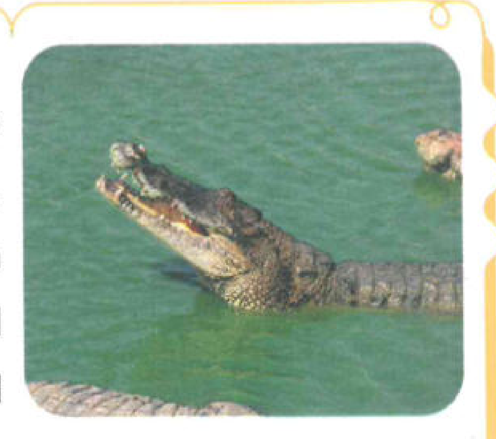
....

2 How many species of birds are there in Egypt?

....

Vacations in Egypt

إجازات في مصر



On the river

Hi, I'm Nadia. Next month, we're going on a tour to see the birds and animals which live near the water. We'll travel along the river in small boats, and camp in tents at night. We'll bring our cameras, because we'll see some amazing things. We hope to see lizards and turtles, as well as lots of interesting plants. However, we mustn't swim because there might be crocodiles!

مرحبًا، أنا نادية. في الشهر القادم، سنقوم بجولة لرؤية الطيور والحيوانات التي تعيش بالقرب من الماء. سنسافر على طول النهر في قوارب صغيرة ونخيم في الخيام ليلًا. سنحضر كاميراتنا، لأننا سنرى بعض الأشياء المذهلة. نأمل أن نرى السحالي والسلاحف، بالإضافة إلى الكثير من النباتات المثيرة للاهتمام. ومع ذلك، يجب ألا نسبح لأنه قد يكون هناك تماسيح!



Desert sunsets

Hi, I'm Adam. I love visiting this place with my family. We went last year, and in the evenings, we saw lots of wildlife when the sun went down – more animals live on the sand than you might think. This year we'll stay outside and cook meals under the stars, so we must bring a tent. Then we'll walk in small groups to see the wildlife around us.

مرحبًا، أنا آدم. أحب زيارة هذا المكان مع عائلتي. لقد ذهبنا العام الماضي، وفي المساء، شاهدنا الكثير من الحياة البرية عندما غربت الشمس – يعيش عدد كبير من الحيوانات على الرمال أكثر مما قد تعتقد. هذا العام سنبقى في الخارج ونُعِد وجبات الطعام تحت النجوم، لذلك يجب علينا إحضار خيمة. ثم سنسير في مجموعات صغيرة لرؤية الحياة البرية من حولنا.

Snorkel safari



Hi, I'm Lara. We're going to have the chance to do some underwater photography on our vacation! We'll set off on a tour from the beach in small boats, and sail out to places where we can see many different kinds of fish. There are beautiful, bright-colored fish there, as well as coral reefs. The tour is only on Monday and Wednesday because this is a protected area, so there mustn't be too many trips.

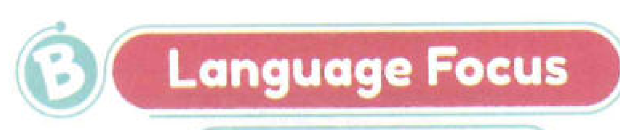
مرحبًا، أنا لارا. ستتاح لنا الفرصة لالتقاط بعض الصور الفوتوغرافية تحت الماء فى إجازتنا! سننطلق فى جولة من الشاطئ بقوارب صغيرة، ونبحر إلى أماكن حيث يمكننا رؤية العديد من أنواع الأسماك المختلفة. وتوجد هناك أسماك جميلة ذات ألوان زاهية، بالإضافة إلى الشعاب المرجانية. الجولة هى فقط يوما الإثنين والأربعاء لأن هذه منطقة محمية، لذلك يجب ألا يكون هناك الكثير من الرحلات.

Birds at the sea



Hi, I'm Fares. Next week, we're going on a tour to see some beautiful birds. We'll visit quiet beaches on a small bus, to see how many different kinds we can see. The sea in this area is a very popular place for birds to find food, so it will be a busy day. We're definitely going to bring our cameras! We must bring our own lunches too, as there are no shops there.

مرحباً، أنا فارس. فى الأسبوع القادم، سنقوم بجولة لرؤية بعض الطيور الجميلة. سنقوم بزيارة الشواطئ الهادئة على متن حافلة صغيرة، لنرى عدد الأنواع المختلفة التى يمكننا رؤيتها. يعد البحر فى هذه المنطقة مكانًا مشهورًا جدًا للطيور للعثور على الطعام، لذلك سيكون يومًا حافلًا. نحن بالتأكيد سنحضر كاميراتنا! يجب علينا إحضار وجبات الغداء الخاصة بنا أيضًا، حيث لا توجد متاجر هناك.



B Language Focus

must / mustn't

We use "**must**" when we talk about something that we have to do or that is important to do.
نستخدم "must" عند التحدث عن شيء يجب علينا فعله أو مهم فعله.

Subject (الفاعل) + must + (inf.) الفعل فى المصدر + تكملة الجملة.

We must bring a tent.
يجب علينا إحضار خيمة.

We use "**mustn't (must not)**" when we are not allowed to do something.
نستخدم "mustn't (must not)" عندما يكون غير مسموح لنا بفعل شيء ما.

Subject (الفاعل) + mustn't + (inf.) الفعل فى المصدر + تكملة الجملة.

We mustn't swim here because there might be crocodiles!
لا يجب أن نسبح هنا لأن من المحتمل وجود تماسيح!

Check point

Choose the correct answer:

1. We (mustn't – can't – must – aren't) be careful in the natural environment. SB
2. Omar (must – is – mustn't – can) speak loudly in the library.
3. You must (finish – finishing – finishes – finished) your homework before going to sleep.
4. We (must – should – mustn't – doesn't) take pets to school!
5. You (mustn't – doesn't – must – isn't) shout.
6. The train will leave at 7 am. We must (arriving – arrive – arrived – arrives) on time.
7. My father drives a car very well, but he (can't – mustn't – isn't – must) wear a seatbelt.
8. Salma (mustn't – isn't – don't – must) eat too many sweets. It's unhealthy.



Lesson 2



• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

8

1. People can go .... in the Red Sea.
   a) snorkeling b) cooking c) shopping d) watching
2. ".................................." means perfect or excellent. SB
   a) Simple b) Beautiful c) Ideal d) Bright
3. .... is a way of traveling that doesn't damage the environment.
   a) Safari b) Eco-tourism c) Sailing d) Hiking
4. On eco-tourism vacations, we always stay in simple ....
   a) city b) accommodation c) village d) apartment
5. Eco-tourism is more .... than traditional tourism.
   a) expensive b) hard c) sustainable d) worse
6. You mustn't get too close to birds, they might ....
   a) go down b) fly away c) migrate d) damage
7. People who go bird .... in Egypt will have a lot to see.
   a) watching b) snorkeling c) cooking d) traveling
8. Eco-tourism is designed to .... nature.
   a) damage b) hurt c) protect d) take

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

4

migrate – warmer – colder – interesting – distances

Many people are starting to visit Egypt for bird and wildlife watching. There are lots of ....(1)........... birds to see here. Many kinds of birds ....(2)........... - they must fly to different countries at certain times of year, to find food, or have ....(3)........... weather. The birds often must fly very long ....(4)..........., and lots of their journeys go over Egypt, because it is in North Africa and close to Asia and Europe.

3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: 4

1. cook – under – We'll – the – meals – stars.

   ....

2. mustn't – trash – We – in – leave – desert – the.

   ....

3. watching – in – People – go – bird – Egypt.

   ....

4. to – respect – Eco-tourism – a good – is – way – nature.

   ....

4 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets: 8

SB

1. You (mustn't) .... respect nature.
2. I mustn't (scaring) .... birds or animals.
3. You (must) .... throw trash in the river.
4. We mustn't (ate) .... in the library.
5. You must (listening) .... to your teacher in the class.
6. They (can) .... play on the crosswalk.
7. Ahmed (mustn't) .... be careful while crossing the road.
8. You must (brushed) .... your teeth before going to bed.

5 Punctuate the following: 2

1. egypt is an amazing country

   ....

2. we must bring a tent

   ....

6 Write a text of about FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements: 5

"Eco-tourism"

a way of traveling – protect nature

....

....

....

....



Lesson 3





A The benefits of eco-tourism

فوائد السياحة البيئية



Look and read: انظر واقرأ:

My presentation today is about eco-tourism and why it is a good idea. Egypt is a very beautiful country, so we must look after it. However, lots of people want to visit Egypt because it is a very interesting place.

عرضى اليوم يدور حول السياحة البيئية وسبب كونها فكرة جيدة. مصر بلد جميل جدًّا، لذا يجب أن نعتنى به. ومع ذلك، يرغب الكثير من الناس فى زيارة مصر لأنها مكان مثير للاهتمام للغاية.

It is good if we have lots of visitors, but tourism can sometimes mean too many big hotels and too much traffic. This can cause problems. Eco-tourism is good because people can visit and enjoy the environment but not in a way that damages the environment. These are my ideas about why I think eco-tourism is a good idea:

من الجيد أن يكون لدينا عدد كبير من الزوار، لكن السياحة قد تعنى فى بعض الأحيان وجود عدد كبير جدًّا من الفنادق الكبيرة وحركة مرور كبيرة جدًّا. هذا يمكن أن يسبب مشاكل. السياحة البيئية جيدة لأن الناس يمكنهم زيارة البيئة والاستمتاع بها ولكن ليس بطريقة تضر بالبيئة. هذه هى أفكارى حول سبب اعتقادى أن السياحة البيئية فكرة جيدة:

If people learn more about the environment, they will want to protect it. If tourists take care of the places they visit, they will cause less damage to the environment. If tourists stay in simple, eco-friendly accommodation, there won't be so many big hotels. If eco-tourism is successful, it will create new jobs for the local people.

إذا تعلم الناس المزيد عن البيئة، فسوف يرغبون فى حمايتها. إذا اهتم السائحون بالأماكن التى يزورونها، فإنهم سيتسببون فى ضرر أقل للبيئة. إذا أقام السائحون فى أماكن إقامة بسيطة وصديقة للبيئة، فلن يكون هناك الكثير من الفنادق الكبيرة. إذا نجحت السياحة البيئية، فإنها ستخلق فرص عمل جديدة للسكان المحليين.

Thank you for listening. Are there any questions? شكرا على استماعكم. هل هناك أية أسئلة؟

Extra vocabulary

presentation عرض تقديمى	look after = take care of يعتنى بـ ...	traffic حركة مرورية
cause يسبب	less damage ضرر أقل	eco-friendly (adj.) صديق للبيئة
successful (adj.) ناجح	create new jobs نخلق فرص عمل	campsite مخيم / معسكر
go sightseeing يشاهد المعالم السياحية	relaxing (adj.) مريح	local communities المجتمعات المحلية

Language Focus

The Present Simple Tense زمن المضارع البسيط

Affirmative Form:
صيغة الإثبات

I/ We/ They/ You/ اسم جمع + (inf.) الفعل فى المصدر + تكملة الجملة.

e.g. I go to school on foot.

He/ She/ It/ اسم مفرد + (inf. + s, es, ies) + تكملة الجملة.

e.g. Lama visits her grandparents every Friday.

e.g. She watches TV in the evening.

e.g. Omar studies his lessons in the afternoon.

Negative Form:
صيغة النفى

I/ We/ They/ You/ اسم جمع + don't + (inf.) الفعل فى المصدر + تكملة الجملة.

e.g. We don't have eggs for breakfast.

He/ She/ It/ اسم مفرد + doesn't + (inf.) الفعل فى المصدر + تكملة الجملة.

e.g. Ali doesn't play basketball.

Check point

Choose the correct answer:

1. They (rides – ride – riding – to ride) their bikes to school.
2. Huda (play – plays – playing – to play) tennis at the weekend.
3. Doaa and Asmaa (don't – doesn't – aren't – haven't) have a car.
4. The cat doesn't (eat – eats – eating – ate) grass.

The Future Simple Tense زمن المستقبل البسيط

Affirmative Form:
صيغة الإثبات

Subject + will + (inf.) الفعل فى المصدر + تكملة الجملة.

e.g. We will meet at the club tomorrow.

Negative Form:
صيغة النفى

Subject + will not = won't + (inf.) الفعل فى المصدر + تكملة الجملة.

e.g. Soha won't travel next week.

Check point

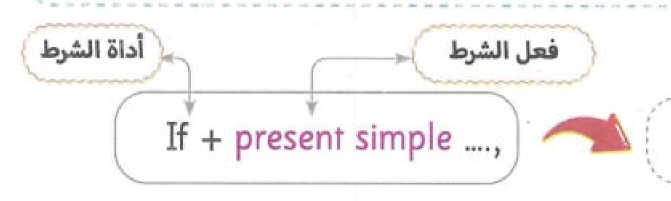
Choose the correct answer:

1. I (visited – visit – will visit – visits) my grandpa next week.
2. She (isn't – won't – don't – doesn't) come to my party tomorrow.
3. Mazen won't (studies – studying – studied – study) tonight.

If (First Conditional) لو الشرطية (الحالة الأولى)

We use "If (First Conditional)" to talk about things that are likely to happen in the future.

نستخدم "If" الحالة الشرطية الأولى للحديث عن الأشياء التى من المحتمل أن تحدث فى المستقبل.



جواب الشرط

subject (الفاعل) + will + (inf.) الفعل فى المصدر.

If I am hungry, I will eat a snack.

إذا شعرت بالجوع، فسآكل وجبة خفيفة.

If he doesn't leave now, he'll miss the bus.

إذا لم يغادر الآن، فسوف يفوته الأتوبيس.



لاحظ الاختصارات:

will = 'll

e.g. If people learn more about the environment, they'll want to protect it.

will not = won't

e.g. If tourists stay in simple accommodation, there won't be so many big hotels.

Check point

Choose the correct answer:

1. If you (go – goes – went – going) to bed late tonight, you won't get up early tomorrow. SB
2. If they study hard, they will (passed – pass – passing – passes) the exam.
3. If she (finish – finishes – finished – finishing) her homework, she will play some video games.
4. If it (don't – aren't – isn't – doesn't) rain tomorrow, we'll go to the beach.
5. If he (don't – isn't – doesn't – didn't) wear a coat, he will feel cold.
6. If it's sunny this weekend, we (can't – are – will – is) go to the park.
7. If we (has – have – having – had) time, we'll watch the TV.
8. If it rains, we will not (playing – plays – played – play) outside.
9. If Soha and Omar (saving – saved – save – saves) money, they will buy a new car.
10. If they (doesn't – do – didn't – don't) invite me, I won't come to the party.



B Science

Bird Migration هجرة الطيور



Listen, point, and say: استمع، أشر وقل:

Main vocabulary






pelican بجعة	kingfisher طائر الرفراف	swift طائر السمام	eagle نسر

Extra vocabulary

journey	رحلة طويلة	North Africa	شمال إفريقيا	Europe	أوروبا
falcon	صقر	flock	سرب (قطيع)	Mediterranean coasts	سواحل البحر المتوسط
oases	واحات	Lake Qarun	بحيرة قارون	flamingos	طيور النحام

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعـــال منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
migrate	يهاجر	migrated	seem	يبدو	seemed
use	يستخدم	used	try	يحاول	tried

Irregular verbs أفعـــال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
leave	يغادر	left	make	يصنع	made
know	يعرف	knew	spend	يقضي	spent

Expressions and Phrases

such as	مثل	year after year	سنة تلو الأخرى
spend a long time	يقضي وقتًا طويلًا	find out	يكتشف

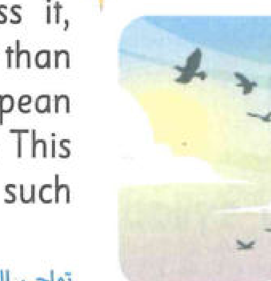
Important sentences جمل هامة

- Many birds migrate to find warmer weather. - تهاجر العديد من الطيور بحثًا عن طقس أكثر دفئًا.
- There are often large flocks of water birds near lakes and oases. - غالبًا ما توجد أسراب كبيرة من الطيور المائية بالقرب من البحيرات والواحات.
- Migrating birds fly very long distances. - تطير الطيور المهاجرة لمسافات طويلة جدًا.
- They might use the sun or the stars to find out where to go. - قد يستخدمون الشمس أو النجوم لمعرفة أين يذهبون.

A long journey رحلة طويلة



Look and read: انظر واقرأ:



Many birds migrate to and from Egypt, and across it, because of where it is in the world. North Africa is hotter than Europe, so in winter, many birds leave northern European countries and fly to Egypt and other warmer places. This means that lots of interesting birds migrate to Egypt, such as eagles, falcons, and swifts.

تهاجر العديد من الطيور من وإلى مصر، وعبرها، بسبب موقعها فى العالم. شمال إفريقيا أكثر سخونة من أوروبا، لذلك فى فصل الشتاء، تغادر العديد من الطيور بلدان شمال أوروبا وتطير إلى مصر وغيرها من الأماكن الأكثر دفئًا. وهذا يعنى أن الكثير من الطيور المثيرة للاهتمام تهاجر إلى مصر، مثل النسور والصقور وطيور السمام.

Many water birds migrate to Egypt, too. You can often see large flocks of birds such as pelicans near water, along the Red Sea and Mediterranean coasts, as well as on the Nile. These birds often eat fish or plants that live in rivers, lakes, oases, and seas. Lake Qarun in Fayoum is a good place to see flamingos.

تهاجر العديد من الطيور المائية إلى مصر أيضًا. يمكنك فى كثير من الأحيان رؤية أسراب كبيرة من الطيور مثل البجع بالقرب من المياه، على طول سواحل البحر الأحمر والبحر الأبيض المتوسط، وكذلك على نهر النيل. غالبًا ما تأكل هذه الطيور الأسماك أو النباتات التى تعيش فى الأنهار والبحيرات والواحات والبحار. بحيرة قارون فى الفيوم مكان جيد لرؤية طيور النحام.

Some birds fly very long distances, making the same journey year after year. Even young birds that migrate for the first time seem to know how to get to the place they need to be. How do these birds know where to go? They might use the sun, the stars, or the things they can see on the way. Scientists have spent a long time trying to find out how they do this!

تطير بعض الطيور لمسافات طويلة جدًّا، وتقوم بنفس الرحلة سنة بعد سنة. حتى الطيور الصغيرة التى تهاجر لأول مرة يبدو أنها تعرف كيفية الوصول إلى المكان الذى تحتاج إليه. كيف تعرف هذه الطيور إلى أين تذهب؟ وقد يستخدمون الشمس أو النجوم أو الأشياء التى يمكنهم رؤيتها فى الطريق. لقد أمضى العلماء وقتًا طويلًا فى محاولة معرفة كيفية القيام بذلك!

Check point

1 Why do many birds migrate to and from Egypt?

....

2 What do migrating birds eat?



....



Pronunciation



Listen and say: استمع وقل:

A syllable: is a part of a word that contains a single vowel sound.
المقطع الصوتى: هو جزء من كلمة، ويحتوى على صوت متحرك واحد.

 fal-con

two-syllable words كلمات ذات مقطعين	three-syllable words كلمات ذات ثلاثة مقاطع
ea-gles	king-fish-er
weath-er	pel-i-can
fal-con	fla-min-go
care-ful	suc-cess-ful
tour-ism	snor-kel-ing
E-gypt	im-por-tant

Stress التشديد

The way in which a part of a word is emphasized more than the other parts while speaking.
الطريقة التى يتم بها التأكيد على نطق جزء من الكلمة أكثر من الأجزاء الأخرى فى أثناء التحدث.

Most two-syllable words have the stress on the first syllable.
معظم الكلمات ذات المقطعين يكون التشديد على المقطع الأول.

'ea-gles – 'weath-er – 'fal-con – 'care-ful – 'tour-ism – 'E-gypt

Three-syllable words can have the stress on the first syllable or the second syllable.
الكلمات ذات المقطعين أو الثلاثة مقاطع يكون المقطع المشدد هو المقطع الأول أو الثانى.

'king-fish-er – 'pel-i-can – fla-'min- go – suc-'cess-ful – 'snor-kel-ing – im-'por-tant



Lesson 3



• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

6

1 Many birds .... to and from Egypt.
(a. fly – b. migrate – c. eat – d. sleep)

2 North Africa is .... than Europe.
(a. cold – b. colder – c. hot – d. hotter)

3 Many birds leave northern European countries to .... places.
(a. warmer – b. wider – c. smaller – d. cooler)

4 Lots of interesting birds migrate to Egypt, such as ...., falcons and swifts.
(a. chickens – b. ducks – c. eagles – d. pelicans)

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

4

1 .... of birds fly long distances.
a) Tours b) Flocks c) Trips d) Journeys

2 Birds .... to find warmer weather.
a) migrate b) live c) prefer d) spend

3 Tourists must .... of the place they visit.
a) seem b) look like c) take care d) leave

4 .... accommodation is good for the environment.
a) Big b) Expensive c) Eco-friendly d) Large

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

4

coasts – eat – flocks – flamingos – deserts

Many water birds migrate to Egypt. You can often see large ....(1)............... of birds such as pelicans near water, along the Red Sea and Mediterranean ....(2)..........., as well as on the Nile. These birds often ....(3)........... fish or plants that live in rivers, lakes, oases, and seas. Lake Qarun in Fayoum is a good place to see ....(4)........... .

4 Read the text and answer the questions:



5

Many birds migrate to and from Egypt, and across it, because of where it is in the world. North Africa is hotter than Europe, so in winter, many birds leave northern European countries and fly to Egypt and other warmer places. Some birds fly very long distances, making the same journey year after year. Even young birds that migrate for the first time seem to know how to get to the place they need to be. They might use the sun, the stars, or the things they can see on the way. Scientists have spent a long time trying to find out how they do this.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The general idea of the text is about ....
   a) Egypt b) the weather
   c) bird migration d) northern European countries
2. Even young birds that migrate for the .... seem to know how to get to the place they need to be.
   a) second time b) first time c) fourth time d) third time
3. The underlined verb "find out" means ....
   a) travel b) use c) discover d) see

B Answer the following questions:

4. Why do many birds migrate to and from Egypt?

   ....

5. Summarize the passage in two sentences.

   ....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

5

1. water – migrate – Many – Egypt – birds – to.

   ....

2. fly – can – long – Birds – distances – very.

   ....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

8

1. If it rains, I will (staying) .... at home.
2. If I'm not busy tomorrow, I (be) .... help you.
3. If you (not) .... hurry, you will miss the train.
4. If it (snow) ...., we'll go skiing.
5. If Omar comes home late, his mother (doesn't) .... be angry.
6. If you (presses) .... this button, the computer will switch off.
7. If he (feel) .... tired, he will go to the doctor.
8. If she doesn't (works) .... hard, she won't pass the exam.



Writing & Project





A blog

المدونة

Main vocabulary

blog	مدونة	animal habitats	أماكن معيشة الحيوانات
The Ras Mohammed National Park	محمية رأس محمد الوطنية	Sinai Peninsula	شبه جزيرة سيناء

Extra vocabulary

safe (adj.)	آمن	places	أماكن	welcome	مرحبًا
litter	قمامة	babies	صغار	planet	كوكب
fantastic (adj.)	رائع	locals	سكان محليون	shark	سمك القرش

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعـــال منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
protect	يحمى	protected	waste	يهدر	wasted
drop	يسقط	dropped	recycle	يعيد تدوير ...	recycled

Irregular verbs أفعـــال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
think	يعتقد	thought	find	يجد	found
hurt	يؤذى	hurt	cut down	يقطع	cut down

Expressions and Phrases

make sure	يتأكد	for example	على سبيل المثال	good for	جيد لـ
famous for	مشهور بـ	waste water	يهدر المياه	drop litter	يلقى القمامة على الأرض
cut down trees	يقطع الأشجار	great for	عظيم لـ	a lot of space	مساحة كبيرة

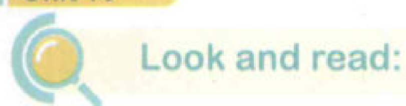


Definitions

a habitat	a place where an animal or plant lives	مكان حيث يعيش الحيوان أو النبات.

Important sentences جمل هامة

- Arwa is writing a blog about how it's important to protect animal habitats.
- تقوم أروى بكتابة مدونة عن أهمية حماية أماكن معيشة الحيوانات.
- Animals need safe places to live, find food, and look after their babies.
- تحتاج الحيوانات إلى أماكن آمنة للعيش، وإيجاد الطعام، والاعتناء بصغارهم.
- There are lots of different habitats in Egypt, such as the desert, sea, mountains, and rivers.
- يوجد العديد من أماكن معيشة الحيوانات في مصر، مثل الصحراء، البحر، والجبال والأنهار.
- To protect these habitats, we mustn't waste water or drop litter, we can recycle paper, so people don't cut down the trees.
- للحفاظ على تلك الأماكن، يجب علينا ألا نهدر المياه أو نلقى القمامة، نستطيع أن نعيد تدوير الورق حتى لا يقطع الناس الأشجار.



Look and read: انظر واقرأ:

Home Archive Contact Pages

Hello, I'm Arwa – welcome to my blog! I'm writing today about something which I think is really important.
I think we should all try to protect animal habitats. Animals need safe places to live, find food, and look after their babies. They are part of our planet, so we must make sure that the things we do don't hurt them.

مرحبًا، أنا أروى - مرحبًا بك فى مدونتى! أكتب اليوم عن شىء أعتقد أنه مهم حقًّا.
أعتقد أننا يجب أن نحاول جميعًا حماية أماكن معيشة الحيوانات. تحتاج الحيوانات إلى أماكن آمنة للعيش فيها، والعثور على الطعام، ورعاية أطفالها. إنهم جزء من كوكبنا، لذا يجب علينا التأكد من أن الأشياء التى نقوم بها لا تؤذيهم.

There are lots of different habitats in Egypt, such as the desert, sea, mountains, and rivers. It is good for everybody if we protect these habitats. For example, when a habitat is healthy, lots of animals can live in one place. With good eco-tourism, people can come on wildlife watching holidays. This is good for the country, and good for the people, too. When people learn about wildlife, they want to protect it.

هناك الكثير من أماكن معيشة الحيوانات المختلفة فى مصر، مثل الصحراء والبحار والجبال والأنهار. إنه أمر جيد للجميع إذا قمنا بحماية تلك الأماكن. على سبيل المثال، عندما يكون مكان معيشة الحيوان صحيًّا، يمكن للعديد من الحيوانات أن تعيش فى مكان واحد. ومع السياحة البيئية الجيدة، يمكن للناس القدوم لقضاء إجازات لمشاهدة الحياة البرية. وهذا أمر جيد للوطن، وجيد للناس أيضًا. عندما يتعلم الناس عن الحياة البرية، فإنهم يريدون حمايتها.

We can all think about things we can do to protect habitats. For example, we mustn't waste water or drop litter. We can recycle paper, so people don't cut down trees. We can also plant flowers and plants, because these are great for birds and insects. You don't need a lot of space – here's a garden box I made for my window!

يمكننا جميعًا التفكير فى الأشياء التى يمكننا القيام بها لحماية أماكن معيشة الحيوانات. على سبيل المثال، يجب ألا نهدر الماء أو نلقى القمامة. يمكننا إعادة تدوير الورق، حتى لا يقطع الناس الأشجار. يمكننا أيضًا زراعة الزهور والنباتات، لأنها مفيدة للطيور والحشرات. لا تحتاج إلى مساحة كبيرة - إليك صندوق الحديقة الذى صنعته لنافذتى!

Check point

1 What do animals need to live?

....

2 What can we do to protect animal habitats?

....



Look and read: انظر واقرأ:

Causes and Effects الأسباب والنتائج

Causes الأسباب	Effects النتائج
There are floods, droughts, or fires. هناك فيضانات أو جفاف أو حرائق.	Animal habitats are damaged. تضرر البيئات الحيوانية.
Animal habitats are damaged. تضرر البيئات الحيوانية.	Animals don't have safe places to live, find food, or look after babies. لن يكون لدى الحيوانات أماكن آمنة للعيش فيها أو العثور على الطعام أو رعاية الصغار.
A habitat is safe and healthy. الموطن آمن وصحي.	Lots of animals can live there. يمكن أن يعيش الكثير من الحيوانات هناك.
We recycle paper. نقوم بإعادة تدوير الورق.	Trees aren't cut down. لن يتم قطع الأشجار.
We grow plants and flowers. نزرع النباتات والزهور.	Birds and insects have food. سيكون لدى الطيور والحشرات طعام.

Language Notes

Conjunctions الروابط

A conjunction is a word that is used to connect words, phrases, and clauses.
الروابط هي كلمة تستخدم للربط بين كلمات، عبارات، أو جمل.

and

We use "and" to join two similar ideas together. تستخدم «و» للربط بين فكرتين متشابهتين.

e.g. We saw turtles, pelicans, and lizards when we went wildlife watching.

but

We use "but" to join two contrasting ideas.
تستخدم «لكن» للربط بين فكرتين متناقضتين.

e.g. This is a beautiful river, but there is pollution in it now.

so

We use "so" to join two sentences to show a result.
تستخدم «لذلك» للربط بين جملتين لتوضيح النتيجة.

reason السبب		result النتيجة
I was tired, أنا كنت متعبًا.	so ولذلك	I didn't go to work. لم أذهب للعمل.

because

We use "because" to show the reason. نستخدم «لأن» لتوضيح السبب.

result النتيجة		reason السبب
I didn't go to work, لم أذهب للعمل.	because لأن	I was tired. أنا كنت متعبًا.

Check point

Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1 Omar likes to swim (but) .... play tennis.
2 I went to the doctor (so) .... I was feeling ill.
3 The children went to the zoo to see lions, tigers (because) .... giraffes.
4 The weather was good, (so) .... I didn't have time to go for a picnic.
5 It was cold yesterday, (because) .... I wore a coat.
6 I like chocolate (and) .... I don't like chips.



The Ras Mohammed National Park محمية رأس محمد الوطنية



Look and read: انظر واقرأ:



The Ras Mohammed National Park on the Red Sea is a fantastic area for locals and tourists to visit. This beautiful area on the Sinai Peninsula is famous for its sea life, warm water, and amazing weather. People come from all over the world to snorkel and scuba dive here.

تعد محمية رأس محمد الوطنية على البحر الأحمر منطقة رائعة يمكن للسكان المحليين والسياح زيارتها. تشتهر هذه المنطقة الجميلة في شبه جزيرة سيناء بالحياة البحرية والمياه الدافئة والطقس المذهل. يأتي الناس من جميع أنحاء العالم للغطس والغوص هنا.

You can see coral reefs and lots of brightly colored fish, and maybe sharks. There is lots of other wildlife, too, and it is a great place for bird watching.

يمكنك رؤية الشعاب المرجانية والكثير من الأسماك متوهجة الألوان، وممكن أسماك القرش. يوجد العديد من الحياة البرية الأخرى، أيضًا، وهو مكان رائع لمشاهدة الطيور.

The National Park is protected, but people are allowed to visit. Because it is so beautiful, lots of visitors come and ride boats, or swim and snorkel in the sea.

الحديقة الوطنية محمية، ولكن يُسمح للناس بزيارتها. ولأنها جميلة جدًا، يأتي الكثير من الزوار ويركبون القوارب، أو يسبحون ويغطسون في البحر.

Check point

1. Where is the Ras Mohammed National Park?

   ....

2. What can visitors do at the National Park? SB

   ....



Lessons 4 & 5



• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: (6)

1. The Ras Mohammed National Park is on the .... Sea.
   (a. Dead – b. Red – c. Mediterranean – d. Nile)
2. This beautiful area on the Sinai Peninsula is famous for its sea life and .... weather.
   (a. word – b. meaning – c. amazing – d. cold)
3. People come from all over the world to .... and scuba dive here.
   (a. ski – b. snorkel – c. study – d. see)
4. You can see .... and lots of brightly colored fish.
   (a. plants – b. trees – c. falcons – d. coral reefs)

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: (4)

wildlife – habitats – protect – healthy – unhealthy

There are lots of different habitats in Egypt, such as the desert, sea, mountains, and rivers. It is good for everybody if we protect these ....(1)............. . For example, when a habitat is ....(2)...................., lots of animals can live in one place. With good eco-tourism, people can come on ....(3).......... watching holidays. This is good for the country, and good for the people, too. When people learn about wildlife, they want to ....(4).......... it.

3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: (5)

1. litter – or – waste – We – water – drop – mustn't.
   ....
2. should – to – try – animal – habitats – We – protect.
   ....
3. Egypt, – types – there – In – many – are – of habitats.
   ....

4 Animals – to – need – places – in – live – safe.

....

5 cut – mustn't – People – trees – down – the.

....

4 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets: 10

1 This was a beautiful river, (because) .... there is pollution in it now. SB

2 Lama likes tea (so) .... coffee.

3 Hazem is sick, (but) .... he will see a doctor.

4 Ola is so happy (and) .... she passed the exam.

5 I have a headache (but) .... a fever.

6 They like reading, (so) .... they don't like swimming.

7 We must take our umbrella (and) .... it's raining now.

8 Omar has a cold, (but) .... he can't go to school.

9 (So) .... I was ill, I took a day off.

10 She was tired, (because) .... she couldn't run fast.

5 Punctuate the following: 2

There are lots of different habitats in egypt

....

When people learn about wildlife they want to protect it

....

6 Write a text of about FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements: 5

"The Ras Mohammed National Park"

fantastic area – Sinai Peninsula

....

....

....

....

Unit 10 REVIEW



Vocabulary

successful (adj.)	ناجح	similar (adj.)	مشابه
careful (adj.)	مهتم/حريص	real (adj.)	حقيقي
sensible (adj.)	منطقي		

feathers	ريش	proverbs	أمثال
description	وصف	well-known (adj.)	معروف
true	حقيقي	exactly	بالضبط
meaning	معنى	worm	دودة
large (adj.)	كبير	strange (adj.)	غريب
nest	عش	plans	خطط

Pronunciation

two syllables

- ea-gles
- weath-er
- fal-con
- care-ful
- tour-ism
- E-gypt

three syllables

- king-fish-er
- pel-i-can
- fla-min-go
- suc-cess-ful
- snor-kel-ing
- im-por-tant

Language Focus

must/mustn't

Subject (الفاعل) + must + (inf.) الفعل فى المصدر + تكملة الجملة.

We must bring a tent.

Subject (الفاعل) + mustn't + (inf.) الفعل فى المصدر + تكملة الجملة.

We mustn't swim because there might be crocodiles!

If (First Conditional)



If I am hungry, I will eat a snack.

If he doesn't leave now, he'll miss the bus.





Lesson 1

مشابه	....	ناجح	....
منطقى	....	مهتم/حريص	....
أمثال	....	حقيقى	....
وصف	....	ريش	....
دودة	....	بالضبط	....
غريب	....	كبير	....
خطط	....	عش	....
يجرؤ	....	معروف	....

Lesson 2

مثالى	....	السياحة البيئية	....
مشهور	....	سكن بسيط	....
أنواع - فصائل	....	صور فوتوغرافية	....
يغطس	....	رحلات	....
الشعب المرجانية	....	تاريخى	....

Lesson 3

بجعة	....	نسر	....
طائر الرفراف	....	طائر السمام	....
شمال إفريقيا	....	رحلة طويلة	....
بحيره قارون	....	طيور النحام	....
سرب (قطيع)	....	يغادر	....

Lessons 4 & 5

أماكن معيشة الحيوانات	....	مدونة	....
أمن	....	شبه جزيرة سيناء	....
كوكب	....	مرحبًا	....
صغار	....	قمامة	....
سكان محليون	....	رائع	....
يحمى	....	محمية رأس محمد الوطنية	....

تأكد من حفظك لكلمات الدروس قبل البدء فى إجابة اختبار الوحدة.

WRITING TIME



How to write about Eco-tourism:

- Eco-tourism is + (تعريفها)
- It's + (أهم ما يميزها)
- It's designed to + (أهميتها للطبيعة)
- People stay in + (الأماكن التى يسكن فيها الناس ووصفها)
- They mustn't + (ذكر شيء من الأشياء التى تدمر البيئة)

Eco-tourism is a way of travelling that doesn't damage the environment. It's more sustainable than traditional tourism, and it is designed to protect nature. People stay in simple accommodation, not large hotels, and they mustn't travel in ways that cause lots of pollution. Many people like wildlife watching and eco-tourism is a good way for people to do this.

How to write about bird migration:

- Many birds migrate + (ذكر سبب الهجرة)
- These birds eat + (ذكر ما يأكله الطيور المائية المهاجرة)
- Lake Qarun in Fayoum is a good place to see + (اسم الطيور المتواجدة هناك)
- Some birds+ (وصف الهجرة)

Many birds migrate to and from Egypt and across it searching for a warmer place, such as eagles, falcons, and swifts. Many water birds migrate to Egypt, too. These birds often eat fish or plants that live in rivers, lakes, oases, and seas. Lake Qarun in Fayoum is a good place to see flamingos. Some birds fly very long distances, making the same journey year after year.

How to write a blog about animal habitats:

- Hello, I'm + الاسم – welcome to my blog!
- I'm writing today about + اسم الموضوع
- Animals need + اذكر الأشياء التى تحتاج إليها الحيوانات للعيش
- There are lots of different habitats in Egypt + أمثلة.

Home Archive Contact Pages

Hello, I'm Ali. welcome to my blog! I'm writing today about animal habitats. I think we should all try to protect animal habitats. Animals need safe place to live, find food, and look after their babies. There are lots of different habitats in Egypt, such as the desert, sea, mountains, rivers.



لكى تتمكن من كتابة الموضوعات بشكل مميز، اتبع هذه الخطوات.

STUDENT'S BOOK CORNER

1 Complete the sentences with must or mustn't:

1 You .... respect nature.
2 You .... scare birds or animals.
3 You .... leave trash in the desert.
4 You .... be careful in the natural environment.
5 You .... walk to school today because there are no buses.
6 You .... walk in the desert when it's hot.

2 Complete the text using the prepositions in the box:

close – migrate – respect – similar – sustainable – wild

1 When people .... the environment, they want to protect it.
2 If you go bird-watching, you mustn't get too .... to the birds.
3 Eco-tourism is more .... than vacations which don't care about the environment.
4 When we visited the National Park, we saw many .... animals.
5 Many birds .... to find warmer weather in winter.
6 Things that are .... look the same or do the same things.

3 Complete the sentences:

1 If I (have) .... an important exam next term, I (study) .... for it.
2 If you (go) .... to bed late tonight, you (not/get up) .... early tomorrow.
3 If Omar (play) .... football for two hours, he (be) .... tired!
4 If she (feel) .... thirsty, she (drink) .... some water.
5 If we (not/work) .... together, we (miss) .... the deadline.





Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:



1. Next month, Salma is going on a ....
   (a. journey – b. picnic – c. tour – d. trip)
2. We'll travel along the river in small ....
   (a. cars – b. boats – c. ships – d. buses)
3. We'll camp in .... at night.
   (a. tents – b. houses – c. accommodation – d. apartments)
4. We'll bring our ...., because we'll see some amazing things.
   (a. cell phones – b. tablets – c. cameras – d. computers)



Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:



1. On eco-tourism vacations, we stay in ....
   a) large hotels b) big apartments c) simple accommodation d) small tents
2. To be .... you need to be the first to do something.
   a) similar b) care c) scary d) successful
3. There are often large .... of water birds near lakes and oases.
   a) flocks b) falcons c) flamingoes d) fish
4. Migrating birds fly very .... distances.
   a) short b) small c) tall d) long

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:



reefs – respect – snorkel – eat – Sinai

The Ras Mohammed National Park on the Red Sea is a fantastic area for locals and tourists to visit. This beautiful area on the ....(1)............ Peninsula is famous for its sea life, warm water, and amazing weather. People come from all over the world to ....(2)............ and scuba dive here. You can see coral ....(3)............ and lots of brightly colored fish, and maybe sharks. People who visit this amazing place must ....(4)............ nature.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:



My name is Sama. I'm going on a vacation with my family. We're going to have the chance to do some underwater photography on our vacation! We'll set off on a tour from the beach in small boats, and sail out to places where we can see many different kinds of fish. There are beautiful, brightly colored fish there, as well as coral reefs.

The tour is only on Monday and Wednesday because this is a protected area, so there mustn't be too many trips. I'm very excited!

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The general idea of the text is about ....
   a) Sama's vacation b) Sama's birthday
   c) Sama's family d) Sama's school
2. The tour is only .... a week.
   a) one day b) three days
   c) four days d) two days
3. The underlined verb "set off" means ....
   a) go b) come back c) sleep d) study

B Answer the following questions:

4. Where is Sama going?
   ....
5. Why is the tour only on Monday and Wednesday?
   ....

Writing

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: (3)

1. flock – a – together – Birds – feather – of.
   ....
2. doesn't – Eco-tourism – the – damage – environment.
   ....
3. mustn't – birds – scare – animals – You – or.
   ....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets: (2)

1. If you (ate) .... too many sweets, you'll feel sick.
2. You must (listening) .... to your teacher carefully.

7 Punctuate the following: (1)

I'm tarek and this is dalia. ....

8 Write a text of about FIFTY(50) words using the following guiding elements: (5)

"An eco-tourism vacation"

Where did you stay? – What did you do to respect nature?

....
....
....
....

Assess your progress

< 50%	50 : 64%	65 : 84%	85 : 100%
Study again	Practice more	Solve more exams	Well done!



1 Read and complete the dialog:

wildlife – go – What – went – amazing

Youssef : Where did you .... last vacation?
Hani : I .... to the desert.
Youssef : .... did you see there?
Hani : I saw lots of ....; more animals live on the sand than you might think.
Youssef : That's ....

2 Read and circle the odd word out:

1 pelican – eagle – swift – flock ....
2 migrate – leave – kingfisher – fly ....
3 bird – successful – large – sensible ....
4 play – study – feel – going ....
5 snorkel – dive – sustainable – respect ....

3 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

1 must – nature – People – respect.

....

2 visiting – Omar – this – loves – place.

....

3 bird – the – worm – The early – catches.

....

4 very – distances – Migrating – fly – birds – long.

....

5 are – Egypt – different – There – in – habitats.

....



Unit 11 How can I help?

كيف يمكننى المساعدة؟

Unit Overview

Student's Book Exercises | Al-Azhar | Answers 100% Q&A

- By the end of this unit, the student will be able to:

- بنهاية هذه الوحدة، سيكون التلميذ قادرًا على أن:

- listen, read, research, and write about charity work and volunteering. - يستمع، يقرأ، يبحث، ويكتب عن العمل الخيرى والتطوع.
- use infinitives of purpose. - يستخدم صيغة المصدر.
- read and understand three texts about mystery objects. - يقرأ ويفهم ثلاث فقرات عن الأشياء الغامضة.
- listen to an interview about volunteering. - يستمع إلى حوار صحفى عن التطوع.
- use -ly adverbs and others. - يستخدم ظروف الأحوال بالـ ly وغيرهم.
- read and understand a story about two brothers. - يقرأ ويفهم قصة عن شقيقان.
- say words containing /sh/, /ch/, and /tch/. - يقول الكلمات التى تحتوى على /sh/، /ch/، و /tch/.
- write a biography of a volunteer. - يكتب سيرة ذاتية لمتطوع.
- create a leaflet about being a good citizen. - يصمم منشورًا عن كيف يكون مواطنًا صالحًا.

Did you know?

- There are *charities all over the world that help people, animals, and the planet. They help with many different things, including education, health, culture, and nature.

I can find it out!

- There are some different charities in Egypt. For example, Magdy Yacoub Heart *Foundation offers free and *specialized heart care to Egyptians.

*charities	جمعيات خيرية	*foundation	مؤسسة	*specialized	متخصص





Listen, point, and say: استمع، أشر وقل:

Main vocabulary

volunteer	متطوع	project	مشروع	community	مجتمع
ideas	أفكار	habitats	بيئات / أماكن المعيشة	kindergarten class	حضانة / روضة الأطفال
paintings	رسومات	kind to (adj.)	طيب مع	organization	مؤسسة

Extra vocabulary

called (adj.)	يُدعى / يُسمى	vegetable graden	حديقة خضراوات	fresh (adj.)	طازج
popular (adj.)	محبوب / شائع	trash	قمامة	habitats	أماكن المعيشة
safer (adj.)	أكثر أمانًا	skills	مهارات	nervous (adj.)	متوتر
own (adj.)	خاص	neighbor	جار	stores	المتاجر
alone	بمفردها	great	رائع	difficult	صعب

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعــال منتظمــة

Present		Past	Present		Past
support	يدعم	supported	volunteer	يتطوع	volunteered
start	يبدأ	started	clean	ينظف	cleaned
decide	يقرر	decided	join	ينضم	joined
participate	يشارك	participated	train	يتدرب	trained
paint	يرسم	painted	donate	يتبرع	donated

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
choose	يختار	chose	can	يستطيع	could
grow	يزرع	grew	teach	يعلم	taught
think	يعتقد	thought	see	يرى	saw

Expressions and Phrases

had to	اضطر إلى	so that	لكي
an after-school club	نادي ما بعد المدرسة	the younger children	الأطفال الأصغر سنا
a bit nervous	متوتر قليلًا	get better at	يتحسن في
it's really good fun	إنها حقًا متعة جيدة	take part in	يشارك في
give away	يتبرع	help out	يمد يده بالمساعدة
start up	يبدأ في	look forward to	يتطلع إلى

like being	يحب أن يكون	it would be nice to	سيكون من الجميل أن
look nicer	تبدو أجمل	used to	اعتاد أن
look after	يعتنى بـ	She'e getting a bit older	إنها تكبر قليلًا
difficult for	صعب على	go shopping	يذهب للتسوق
went on vacation	ذهب فى إجازة	local children's charity	جمعية خيرية محلية للأطفال

Definitions

donate	يتبرع	to give something away to help a person or organization للتبرع بشىء لمساعدة شخص أو منظمة
participate	يشارك	to take part in something المساهمة (المشاركة) فى شىء ما
support	يدعم (يساند)	to do things that help a particular person or group القيام بأشياء تساعد شخصًا ما أو مجموعة معينة
volunteer	متطوع	to do a job or activity and not take any money for it القيام بعمل أو نشاط وعدم أخذ أى أموال مقابل ذلك

Important sentences جمل هامة

- We started a project called Community Help. - لقد بدأنا مشروعا يدعى (يسمى) مساعدة المجتمع.
- We choose something to support other people or things in our community.
  - اخترنا شيئًا لدعم الأشخاص أو الأشياء الأخرى فى مجتمعنا.
- Some people wanted to start a vegetable garden in the school.
  - أراد بعض الأشخاص إنشاء حديقة خضراوات فى المدرسة.
- Other people volunteered to help clean trash from the river.
  - وتطوع أشخاص آخرون للمساعدة فى تنظيف القمامة من النهر.
- I decided to start an after-school club to teach the younger children football skills.
  - قررت أن أنشئ ناديًا بعد المدرسة لتعليم الأطفال الصغار مهارات كرة القدم.

Check point

Choose the correct answer:

1. He was very happy to (participate – play – make – paint) in the project.
2. I'm a (worker – volunteer – donate – support). I help my community and I don't take money for it.
3. Ali likes to (train – see – support – decide) people who need help in his community.
4. I like buying (bad – ugly – fresh – old) fruits and vegetables.
5. We always (donate – participate – support – help) toys and money to the hospital.
6. Children under five go to (kindergarten – art – science – math) class.

Look and read: انظر واقرأ:

Hi, I'm Tamer. At school, we started a project called Community Help. We all had to choose something we could do to support other people or things in our community. There were lots of ideas. For example, some people wanted to start a vegetable garden in the school to grow fresh fruit and vegetables. That was really popular. Other people volunteered to help clean trash from the river, so that animals' habitats are safer.

مرحبًا، أنا تامر. في المدرسة، بدأنا مشروعا يسمى مساعدة المجتمع. كان علينا جميعًا أن نختار شيئًا ما يمكننا القيام به لدعم الأشخاص أو الأشياء الأخرى في مجتمعنا. كان هناك الكثير من الأفكار. على سبيل المثال، بعض الناس أرادوا إنشاء حديقة نباتية في المدرسة لزراعة الفواكه والخضراوات الطازجة. كان ذلك حقًا محبوبًا (شائعًا). وتطوع أشخاص آخرون للمساعدة في تنظيف القمامة من النهر، لكي تكون أماكن معيشة الحيوانات أكثر أمانًا.



I decided that I wanted to help children in my school. I love sports, so I started an after-school club to teach the younger children football skills. I was a bit nervous at first, but lots of children joined in and their parents were very happy. It was great to have so many children participating.

قررت أنني أريد مساعدة الأطفال في مدرستي. أنا أحب الرياضة، لذلك أنشأت ناديًا بعد المدرسة لتعليم الأطفال الصغار مهارات كرة القدم. لقد كنت متوترًا بعض الشيء في البداية، ولكن انضم الكثير من الأطفال. وكان آباؤهم سعداء للغاية. وكان من الرائع أن يشارك هذا العدد الكبير من الأطفال.

I teach the class after school on Wednesdays. The class is for 45 minutes, and we train and play games. I like seeing the children get better at football, and it's really good fun, too.

أقوم بتدريس الفصل بعد اليوم الدراسي أيام الأربعاء. مدة الفصل 45 دقيقة، ونحن نتدرب ونلعب الألعاب. أحب رؤية الأطفال وهم يتحسنون في كرة القدم، و حقًا إنه أمر ممتع جدًا أيضًا.

Listen and read: استمع واقرأ:



Reem

I love reading, so I decided to help out in the kindergarten class on a Thursday by reading to the children. I love reading stories with the younger children, and they like it too. We're starting up a project where they think of their own stories next week. I'm looking forward to that.



أحب القراءة؛ لذلك قررت أن أساعد في روضة الأطفال حصة يوم الخميس من خلال القراءة للأطفال. أحب قراءة القصص مع الأطفال الصغار، وهم يحبون ذلك أيضًا. نحن نبدأ المشروع حيث يفكرون في قصصهم الخاصة الأسبوع المقبل. أنا أتطلع إلى ذلك.



Ibrahim

My little sister was sick last month, and she was in the hospital. She's better now, but when we visited her, she was sad because she didn't like being there. I thought it would be nice to do something for children who are sick. My friends and I painted lots of big pictures of flowers, animals, beaches, and trees. Our parents donated lots of toys too. We took these and the paintings to the hospital to make the rooms look nicer.

كانت أختي الصغيرة مريضة الشهر الماضي، وكانت في المستشفى. إنها أفضل الآن، ولكن عندما زرناها كانت حزينة بسبب ذلك لم تحب أن تكون هناك. اعتقدت أنه سيكون من الجميل أن تفعل شيئًا للأطفال المرضى. رسمت أنا وأصدقائي الكثير من الصور الكبيرة للزهور والحيوانات والشواطئ والأشجار. تبرع آباؤنا بالكثير من الألعاب أيضًا. أخذنا هؤلاء واللوحات إلى المستشفى لجعل الغرف تبدو أجمل.



Mariam

My neighbor has always been kind to us. She used to help my mom look after me when I was younger. Now she's getting a bit older, and it's sometimes difficult for her to go shopping. So, I ask her what she needs, then I go to the stores and get it. I like to help her.

لطالما كانت جارتي دائمًا لطيفة معنا. كانت تساعد أمي في الاعتناء بي عندما كنت أصغر سنًا. الآن أصبحت أكبر قليلًا، في بعض الأحيان يكون من الصعب عليها الذهاب للتسوق. لذلك، أسألها ما الذي تحتاج إليه، ثم أذهب إلى المتاجر وأحصل عليه. أحب أن أساعدها.





• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: 6

1. Youssef is in grade ....
   (a. two – b. four – c. six – d. nine)
2. They started a project at ....
   (a. hospital – b. school – c. park – d. office)
3. People from the community .... to help.
   (a. volunteered – b. danced – c. cooked – d. paid)
4. They grow strawberries, oranges, and ....
   (a. bananas – b. pineapples – c. mangoes – d. apples)

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: 6

1. To " .... " is to do things that help a particular person or group.
   a) donate b) support c) volunteer d) participate
2. I'm .... forward to working as a teacher.
   a) taking b) looking c) doing d) trainig
3. Ali always .... in the school activities.
   a) looks after b) takes part c) gives away d) decide
4. Parents should .... their kids.
   a) help out b) look forward c) look after d) start up
5. People in my community are .... a local children's charity.
   a) donating b) painting c) shopping d) starting out
6. To "......................." means to give something away to help a person or organization.
   a) volunteer b) support c) donate d) participate

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: 4

volunteer – neighbor – garden – club – donate

People in my community help each other. Some people start a vegetable ....(1)......... to grow fresh fruit and vegetables. Some people ....(2)......... to help clean trash from the river. Some people help children in school. They start an after-school ....(3)......... to teach them how to play sports. When a ....(4)......... is old, we help go shopping and get what he needs.



4 Read the text and answer the questions:



My name is Ola. I like to help my community and my friends too. Every Friday I volunteer to help clean trash from the river, so that animals' habitats are safer. I love animals. My friend Amira helps old people. It's difficult for them to go shopping, so she asks them what they need and she goes to the stores and gets them it. My friend Hana donates lots of toys to the children's hospital. My friend Laila helps out in the kindergarten. She reads stories to the younger children.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 The general idea of the text is about ....

a) helping the community b) making toys
c) reading stories d) helping animals

2 The word "volunteer" means doing an activity or a job and not taking any .... for it.

a) food b) money c) clothes d) stories

3 Ola cleans trash from the ....

a) beach b) lake c) river d) sea

B Answer the following questions:

4 How does Amira help old people? ....

5 What does Hana donate? ....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:



1 clean – Lara – trash – volunteers – the – to.

....

2 donated – They – toys – and clothes – the hospital – to

....

3 help out – I – kindergarten – class – at – the.

....

4 They – animals' – wanted to – better – habitats – make.

....

6 Punctuate the following:



1 what day is the club ....

2 i help out in the kindergarten class on thursday. ....








Listen, point, and say: استمع، أشر وقل:

Main Vocabulary





nature camera كاميرا الحياة البرية	grabber لاقط/ خطاف	multi-grip مقبض متعدد الاستخدامات

Extra vocabulary

gloves	قفازات	trash	قمامة	metal (adj.)	معدنى
stick	عصا	fingers	أصابع	handle	مقبض/ يد
center	مركز	glass bottle	زجاجة	jars	برطمانات
part	جزء	wildlife	الحياة البرية	forest	غابة
card	بطاقة	app	تطبيق	exhibition	معرض فنى
lemonade	عصير الليمون	fridge	الثلاجة		

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
pick up	يلتقط	picked up	protect	يحمى	protected
carry	يحمل	carried	collect	يجمع	collected
close	يغلق	closed	squeeze	يعصر	squeezed
drop	يسقط	dropped	volunteer	يتطوع	volunteered
turn	يستدير	turned	install	يركب (يُنشئ)	installed
film	يصور	filmed	record	يسجل	recorded

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
wear	يرتدى	wore	hold	يمسك	held
show	يعرض	showed	send	يرسل	sent

Expressions and Phrases

do a beach clean-up	يقوم بتنظيف الشاطئ	It's great fun	إنه ممتع جدًا ...
at the end	فى النهاية	at the top	فى الأعلى
it's better than	إنها أفضل من	volunteer at	يتطوع فى
a day center	مركز نهارى	old people	كبار السن
aren't strong enough	ليسوا أقوياء بشكل كافٍ	take off the tops	يخلع / ينزع الغطاء
do a wildlife project	يقوم بمشروع عن الحياة البرية	on the ground	على الأرض
at night	فى الليل	during the day	أثناء النهار
We've learned a lot!	لقد تعلمنا الكثير!	sports center	مركز رياضى
turn on (the radio)	يشغل (الراديو)	pick up (the phone)	يرفع سماعة التليفون



Vocabulary Check

كلمة (app) هى اختصار من كلمة (application) بمعنى تطبيق.



Look and read: انظر واقرأ:

Tamim

When we do a beach clean-up, we wear gloves to protect our hands. We carry black bags for the trash we collect. And look! We use this to pick up the trash. It's great fun to use. It's a long metal stick with two fingers at the end. The fingers open and close when you squeeze the handle at the top. You open and close the fingers to pick up the trash, then drop it in the bag. Mom says it's better than picking things up with your hands.

عندما نقوم بتنظيف الشاطئ، نرتدى قفازات لحماية أيدينا. نحمل أكياسًا سوداء للقمامة التى نجمعها. وانظروا نحن نستخدم هذا لالتقاط القمامة. إنها ممتعة جدًّا فى الاستخدام. إنها عصا معدنية طويلة بأصبعين فى نهايتها. تفتح الأصابع وتغلق عند الضغط على المقبض فى الأعلى. تقوم بفتح وإغلاق أصابعك لالتقاط القمامة، ثم تضعها فى الكيس. تقول أمى إنه أفضل من التقاط الأشياء بيديك.



grabber
لاقط/ خطاف

Dalida

I volunteer at a day center for old people. Some old people can't open glass bottles and jars. Their hands aren't strong enough. So, they use this to take off the tops. This is how you use it. Hold the jar with one hand and put this on the top. Hold this part with your other hand, and then turn it around. It's really easy to use. I love showing this to the people at the day center.

أنا متطوع فى مركز نهارى لكبار السن. بعض كبار السن لا يستطيعون فتح الزجاجات والبرطمانات. أيديهم ليست قوية بما فيه الكفاية. لذلك، يستخدمون هذا لإزالة الأغطية. هذه هى الطريقة التى تستخدمها. امسك البرطمان بيد واحدة وضعها فى الأعلى. امسك هذا الجزء بيدك الأخرى، ثم قُم بتدويره. إنه حقًّا سهل الاستعمال. أحب أن أعرض هذا على الأشخاص فى المركز النهارى.



multi-grip
مقبض متعدد الاستخدامات

Hamza

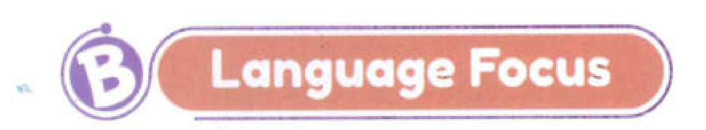
nature camera

We're doing a wildlife project at school, and my teacher installed two of these in the forest. We're using them to film wildlife. He put one on the ground to film animals at night. He put the other in a tree to film birds during the day. Then we record how many animals and birds we see, and what they're doing. It's so interesting. We've learned a lot!

نحن نقوم بتنفيذ مشروع للحياة البرية فى المدرسة، وقام معلمى بتركيب اثنين منها فى الغابة. نحن نستخدمها لتصوير الحياة البرية. هو وضعَ واحدة على الأرض لتصوير الحيوانات ليلًا. ووضع الأخرى فى شجرة لتصوير الطيور أثناء النهار. ثم نسجل عدد الحيوانات والطيور التى نراها و ماذا يفعلون. هذا ممتع حقا . لقد تعلمنا كثيرا .



nature camera
كاميرا الحياة البرية





Listen, point, and say: استمع، أشر وقل:

Infinitives of purpose

صيغة المصدر للغرض

1. We use "to + a verb in the base form" to explain why we do something.
نستخدم «to + مصدر الفعل» لشرح سبب قيامنا بشيء ما.

to + (inf.) مصدر الفعل (الفعل بدون أي إضافات).

e.g.

We go to the park to play football.
نذهب للحديقة للعب كرة القدم.

e.g.

He uses his computer to do his homework.
يستخدم جهاز الكمبيوتر الخاص به لأداء واجباته المدرسية.

Wh- question: السؤال باستخدام كلمة الاستفهام

2. We also use "to + a verb in the base form" to answer questions with "Why".
نستخدم أيضًا «to + مصدر الفعل» للإجابة عن الأسئلة بـ «لماذا».

e.g.
A: Why do you use a multi-grip?
B: To open jars.

Check point

Choose the correct answer:

1. Eman went to the shopping mall (as – with – for – to) buy clothes.
2. They have pencils to (painting – paints – paint – painted) the picture.
3. A: (Why – Who – What – When) did your uncle go to Cairo?
   B: To visit my grandma.
4. I use a key to (closes – closed – closing – close) the door.
5. She uses a wildlife camera (to – for – so – and) film animals.
6. Ahmed goes to the cinema to (watch – watching – watches – watched) movies.
7. A: (What – Which – Why – Where) do you wear gloves on a beach clean-up?
   B: To protect my hands.
8. They travel to Alexandria to (visit – visits – visiting – visited) their grandparents.



Listen, point, and say: استمع، أشر وقل:

Main vocabulary

game console	وحدة الألعاب	controller	وحدات التحكم
button	زر	joystick	عصا التحكم

Extra vocabulary

part	جزء	cool (adj.)	رائع	character	شخصية
home buttons	زر القائمة الرئيسية	menu	قائمة	action button	زر الحركة
directions	اتجاهات	information	معلومات	internet	شبكة الإنترنت
essays	مقالات	handle	المقبض	movies	أفلام

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعـــال منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
press	يضغط	pressed	happen	يحدث	happened
control	يتحكم	controlled	photocopy	ينسخ صورة	photocopied

Expressions and Phrases

It looks great.	هذا يبدو رائع.	What's this part for?	لأى غرض هذا الجزء؟
takes you back	تعود بك إلى	move .... around	يحرك ...
That's right.	هذا صحيح	play games	يلعب الألعاب
watch movies	يشاهد الأفلام	find information	يجد معلومات
write essays	يكتب المقالات	do homework	يؤدى الواجب المنزل
photocopy paper	ينسخ الأوراق	use ... for	يستخدم ... من أجل
go over	يمر من أعلى	turn on	يشغل (جهازًا)
on the internet	على شبكة الإنترنت		

Definitions

button	زر	A button is something you press to make something happen. الزر هو شيء تضغط عليه لتجعل شيئًا ما يحدث.
joystick	عصا التحكم	A joystick is something you can move in different directions to control a computer game. عصا التحكم هى شيء يمكنك تحريكه فى اتجاهات مختلفة للتحكم فى لعبة الكمبيوتر.
controller	الموجِّه / وحدة التحكم	A controller is something we use to play a computer game. وحدة التحكم هى شيء نستخدمه للعب لعبة كمبيوتر.



Listen, point, and say: استمع، أشر وقل:

Mom : Hi Amira. Is this your new games console? It looks great. What's this part for?

مرحبا أميرة. هل هذه وحدة تحكم الألعاب الجديدة الخاصة بك؟ تبدو جيدة. ما هو هذا الجزء؟

Amira : Oh, that's the controller. It's what you use to play the game.

أوه، هذا هو جهاز التحكم. هذا ما تستخدمه للعب اللعبة.

Mom : Cool! And what does this do?

رائع! وماذا يفعل هذا؟

Amira : Those are the action buttons. You use them to tell your character to run, jump, or do other actions.

تلك هى أزرار الحركات. يمكنك استخدامها لإخبار شخصيتك بالجرى أو القفز أو القيام بإجراءات أخرى.

Mom : And what are these parts for?

ولأى غرض هذه الأجزاء؟

Amira : They're the joysticks. They help you move your character around.

إنها عصا التحكم. إنها تساعدك على تحريك شخصيتك.

Mom : OK. So, the home button takes you back to the menu, and the buttons and joysticks are for playing the game.

نعم. لذا، فإن زر الصفحة الرئيسية يعيدك إلى القائمة، والأزرار وعصا التحكم مخصصة للعب اللعبة.

Amira : That's right. Do you want to play a game with me?

هذا صحيح. هل تريد أن تلعب لعبة معى؟

button زر
joystick عصا التحكم
controller جهاز التحكم

 laptop كمبيوتر محمول	People use this to play games or watch movies. You can use it to find information on the internet. You can also write essays and do your homework on it. You can't photocopy paper with it. يستخدم الناس هذا لممارسة الألعاب أو مشاهدة الأفلام. يمكنك استخدامه للعثور على المعلومات على شبكة الإنترنت. يمكنك أيضًا كتابة المقالات والقيام بواجباتك المنزلية عليه. لا يمكنك تصوير الورق به.
headphone سماعة الأذن	That's the part that goes over your ears. هذا هو الجزء الذى يمر فوق أذنيك.
handle مقبض	 This is the handle. It helps you control where you want to go. هذا هو المقبض. يساعدك على التحكم فى المكان الذى تريد الذهاب إليه.
button زر 	This turns on the radio. هذا يشغل الراديو.
swimming mask قناع السباحة	You can use this to swim under water. يمكنك استخدام هذا للسباحة تحت الماء.



Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

6

1. I volunteer at a day center for .... people.
   (a. young – b. old – c. short – d. happy)
2. I show old people how to open .... with a multi-grip.
   (a. books – b. computers – c. jars – d. bags)
3. I pick the trash up with a ....
   (a. camera – b. grabber – c. multi-grip – d. hand)
4. The grabber is very .... to use.
   (a. easy – b. hard – c. bad – d. annoying)

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

6

1. We installed two nature .... in the forest.
   a) grabbers b) televisions c) cameras d) tablets
2. Some old people use the .... to open glass bottles and jars.
   a) phone b) multi-grip c) gloves d) grabber
3. A .... is something you press to make something happen.
   a) camera b) stick c) button d) for
4. You can move in different directions to control a computer game with the ....
   a) camera b) button c) grip d) joystick
5. It's easier to use a grabber to .... the trash.
   a) take off b) pick up c) help out d) look after
6. A .... helps you control where you want to go.
   a) handle b) mask c) stick d) camera

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

4

gloves – clean-up – grabber – stick – plastic

I'm Sara. I live in Alexandria. I do a beach ....(1)............ with my friends every weekend. We always wear ....(2)............ to protect our hands. We carry bags for the trash that we collect. We also use a ....(3)............ to pick up the trash. The grabber is a long metal ....(4)............ with two fingers at the end. I really enjoy my weekends.

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: 4

1. school – We're – a wildlife – at – project – doing.
   ....
2. hands – They – gloves – to protect – wear – their.
   ....
3. for – this – What – use – do – you?
   ....
4. records – The – birds – nature camera – animals – and.
   ....

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets: 8

1. They make cupcakes (for) .... sell in the market.
2. A: (What) .... do use a grabber? B: To pick up the trash.
3. She uses a key to (opens) .... the door.
4. He went to the shopping mall to (bought) .... a jacket.
5. We volunteer (because) .... help old people.
6. He bought two tickets to (watching) .... the movie.
7. I went to the sports center to (played) .... volleyball.
8. A: Why did Mom use an app? B: (For) .... learn French.

6 Punctuate the following: 2

1. what are these buttons for
   ....
2. farah traveled by bus to see her cousins
   ....

7 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements: 5

"Beach clean-up"

I volunteer to ... – pick up the trash ...

....
....
....
....
....
....



Lesson 3





A It's good to give back to the community

من الرائع رد الجميل للمجتمع



Listen, point, and say: استمع، أشر وقل:

Main vocabulary

interview	مقابلة شخصية	volunteering	التطوع	community	المجتمع
fundraising	جمع التبرعات	timetable	جدول زمني	charity	جمعية خيرية
rewarding (adj.)	مُجزٍ	citizens	مواطنون	confidence	الثقة

Extra vocabulary

volunteer	متطوع	leader	قائد	event	حدث
trip	رحلة قصيرة	hard (adj.)	صعب	healthy diet	نظام غذائي صحي
advice	نصيحة	teenagers	مراهقون	friendly (adj.)	ودود
abilities	قدرات	donations	تبرعات	life skills	مهارات حياتية
excellent (adj.)	ممتاز	kindly	بعطف	patiently	بصبر

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
welcome	يرحب بـ....	welcomed	participate	يشارك	participated
organize	ينظم	organized	deliver	يوصل	delivered
volunteer	يتطوع	volunteered	socialize	يكون علاقات اجتماعية	socialized
collect	يجمع	collected	receive	يستلم / يستقبل	received
donate	يتبرع	donated			

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
begin	يبدأ	began	become	يصبح	became
meet	يقابل	met			

Expressions and Phrases

after-school volunteer group	مجموعة تطوعية بعدالمدرسة	ever since = since then	منذ ذلك الحين
16-year-old Rawan	روان ذات السادسة عشرة عامًا	help out	تمد يد المساعدة
sports events	أحداث رياضية	interested in	مهتم بـ ...
That sounds like difficult ...	هذا يبدو صعبًا ...	rewarding work	عمل مجزٍ
isn't like	ليس كمثل	give back	يرد الجميل
spend time with	يقضي وقتًا مع	a friendly way	بطريقة ودودة
collect money for	يجمع أموالًا من أجل	feel sure about	يشعر بالثقة
if you can	إذا استطعت	came first	احتل المركز الأول
running race	سباق الجرى	children's day center	مركز الأطفال الصباحى

Definitions

socialize	spend time with people in a friendly way	أن تقضى الوقت مع الناس بطريقة ودية
confidence	feeling sure about your abilities	الشعور بالثقة حول قدراتك
fundraising	collecting money for a charity	جمع المال للأعمال الخيرية
give back	to help others because you have received so much	أن تساعد الآخرين لأنك تلقيت الكثير

Important sentences جمل هامة

- Rawan Ibrahim is a community volunteer leader.
  - روان إبراهيم هى قائدة تطوعية مجتمعية.
- Rawan started volunteering when she was 13.
  - بدأت روان العمل التطوعى عندما كان عمرها ١٣ عامًا.
- Rawan began by helping the younger children with their reading and writing.
  - بدأت روان بمساعدة الأطفال الصغار فى القراءة والكتابة.
- Now she organizes the volunteers for fundraising activities.
  - الآن تنظِّم المتطوعين لأنشطة جمع التبرعات.
- This year, Rawan started volunteering with Food Box, a charity that delivers healthy meal boxes to families who need help.
  - هذا العام، بدأت روان العمل التطوعى مع «Food Box» فود بوكس، وهى مؤسسة خيرية تقوم بتوصيل صناديق الوجبات الصحية للعائلات التى تحتاج إلى المساعدة.

Check point

Choose the correct answer:

1 (Kids – Children – Teenagers – Old people) are people from age 13 to 19.

2 We should be good and helpful (citizens – friends – students – volunteers) for our community.

3 A/An (organization – event – charity – playground) is a place which provide help to people who need.

4 Studying hard for your school subjects is (friendly – rewarding – healthy – sure) work.

5 (Community – Trips – Diet – Volunteering) gives you confidence and helps to socialize.



Listen, read, and role-play: استمع، اقرأ وتبادل الأدوار:





Today we are talking about volunteering in the community, and here is a community volunteer leader. Rawan Ibrahim. Rawan, welcome! Can you tell us how you started volunteering?

نتحدث اليوم عن العمل التطوعى فى المجتمع ومعنا هنا قائد متطوع مجتمعى. روان ابراهيم. روان، مرحبًا! هل يمكنك أن تخبرنا كيف بدأت العمل التطوعى؟





I first started volunteering when I was 13 at an after-school volunteer group. I began by helping the younger children with their reading and writing. I loved working with them, and I've volunteered ever since.

بدأت العمل التطوعى لأول مرة عندما كان عمرى ١٣ عامًا فى مجموعة تطوعية بعد المدرسة. بدأت بمساعدة الأطفال الصغار فى القراءة والكتابة. أحببت العمل معهم، وتطوعت منذ ذلك الحين.





Since then, 16-year-old Rawan has participated in many school and community projects. Now she volunteers in the Summer Schools Activity Group every summer. In the group, Rawan helps out with the children's activities, like sports events and trips to parks and museums. She also organizes the volunteers for fundraising activities. Rawan, how do you find time to do all these things?

ومنذ ذلك الحين، شاركت روان البالغة من العمر ١٦ عامًا فى العديد من المشاريع المدرسية والمجتمعية. وهى الآن تتطوع فى مجموعة أنشطة المدارس الصيفية كل صيف. وفى المجموعة، تساعد روان فى أنشطة الأطفال، مثل الأحداث الرياضية والرحلات إلى المتنزهات والمتاحف. كما أنها تنظم المتطوعين لأنشطة جمع التبرعات. روان، كيف تجدين الوقت للقيام بكل هذه الأشياء؟





It was hard at first, but I wrote a timetable to help me and then it was easy. And this year, I started volunteering with Food Box, a charity that delivers healthy meal boxes to families who need help. I became interested in Food Box because my mom volunteers there.

كان الأمر صعبًا فى البداية، لكننى كتبت جدولًا زمنيًا لمساعدتى، وبعد ذلك أصبح الأمر سهلًا. وهذا العام، بدأت العمل التطوعى مع «Food Box» فود بوكس، وهى مؤسسة خيرية تقدم عبوات وجبات صحية للعائلات التى تحتاج إلى المساعدة. لقد أصبحت مهتمًا بفود بوكس «Food Box» لأن والدتى متطوعة هناك.





Presenter

That sounds like difficult but rewarding work.

يبدو هذا عملًا صعبًا ولكنه مجزٍ.

Rawan



Volunteering isn't like work. It's so much fun! At Food Box, I'm learning a lot about healthy food and what makes a healthy diet. I love delivering the food boxes and helping the children to be good citizens. Helping children makes me happy.

العمل التطوعى ليس مجرد عمل. إنه ممتع للغاية! فى فود بوكس، أنا أتعلم الكثير عن الطعام الصحى وما الذى يجعل النظام الغذائى صحيًا. أحب توصيل صناديق الطعام ومساعدة الأطفال على أن يكونوا مواطنين صالحين. مساعدة الأطفال تجعلنى أشعر بالسعادة.



You learn many important life skills when you volunteer. You learn how to socialize and talk to people you wouldn't usually meet. Volunteering also gives you confidence. It's amazing to see how teenagers grow in confidence when they start volunteering. Fundraising helps charities get the money they need. It's good to give back to the place where you live. My advice to teenagers is "Volunteer and help if you can. You'll enjoy it!"

أنت تتعلم العديد من المهارات الحياتية المهمة عندما تتطوع. تتعلم كيفية التواصل الاجتماعى والتحدث مع الأشخاص الذين لا تقابلهم عادةً. كما يمنحك العمل التطوعى الثقة. إنه لأمر مدهش أن نرى كيف تنمو ثقة المراهقين عندما يبدءون العمل التطوعى. يساعد جمع التبرعات المؤسسات الخيرية فى الحصول على الأموال التى تحتاجها. من الجيد أن ترد الجميل للمكان الذى تعيش فيه. نصيحتى للمراهقين هى «تطوع وساعد إذا استطعت. سوف تستمتع به!»



B Language Focus

Adverbs الاحوال

Adverbs are used to describe how things happen or are done.

تستخدم الأحوال لوصف كيفية حدوث الأشياء.



e.g. He runs **quickly**.

We can make adverbs by adding:

يمكننا تكوين الأحوال بإضافة:

لمعظم الصفات (-ly)



e.g.

- quick سريع → quick**ly** بسرعة
- quiet هادئ → quiet**ly** بهدوء
- patient صبور → patient**ly** بصبر
- bad سيئ → bad**ly** بطريقة سيئة
- kind عطوف → kind**ly** بعطف
- beautiful جميل → beautiful**ly** بطريقة جميلة

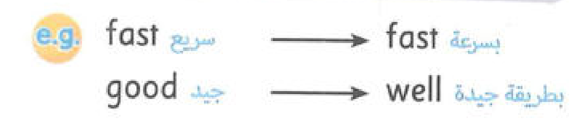
الصفات المنتهية ب (حرف ساكن + y)، يتم حذف ال (y) وأضافة (ily)



e.g.

- angr**y** غاضب → angr**ily** بغضب
- happ**y** سعيد → happ**ily** بسعادة

بعض الصفات لا تتبع القاعدة (irregular)



e.g.

- fast سريع → fast بسرعة
- good جيد → well بطريقة جيدة
- hard جاد → hard بجد

Adverbs can come after the verb:

الظروف يمكن أن تأتى بعد الفعل:

subject + verb + **adverb** ...

She danced **beautifully**.

رقصت بشكل جميل.





Adverbs can come before the verb:

الظروف يمكن أن تأتى قبل الفعل:

subject + **adverb** + verb ...

He **quietly** talked to his friend.

تحدث بهدوء مع صديقه.



The adverbs can't come between the verb and its object.

لا يمكن للأحوال أن تأتى بين الفعل والمفعول به.

She quickly learned the rules. ✓

She learned the rules quickly. ✓

She learned quickly the rules. ✗

Check point

Choose the correct answer:

1. He drove his car (fast – fasted – fasting – fasts).
2. They talked (angry – hungry – angrily – kind).
3. Yara waited (patient – quickly – patiently – hard) for her friends to come.
4. I studied (hard – kind – quiet – bad) for my exam.
5. He sang (beautiful – beauty – beautifully – angry) at the party.
6. He painted his house really (good – well – best – kind).
7. They were very (happily – quietly – happy – angrily).
8. She (quiet – patient – kind – quietly) sat in the library.
9. Adam was late, so he had to run (happy – angry – quiet – quickly).
10. The exams were very (well – hard – patient – beautiful).



Two Brothers, Two Rewards شقيقان ، مكافأتان



أستمع وقل:

Main vocabulary

reward	مكافأة	seed	بذرة
gold	ذهب	silver	فضة
jealous (adj.)	حقود	sparrow	عصفور

Extra vocabulary

village	قرية	rich (adj.)	غني	money	مال
broken (adj.)	مكسور	little (adj.)	صغير (قليل)	strong (adj.)	قوي
again	مجددًا	thick (adj.)	سميك	alone	وحيدًا

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعـــال منتظمـة

Present		Past	Present		Past
share	يشارك	shared	care	يهتم	cared
plant	يزرع	planted	reply	يرد	replied
reach	يصل	reached	disappear	يختفي	disappeared

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

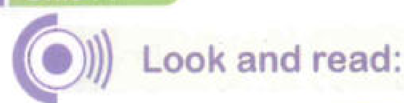
Present		Past	Present		Past
grow	ينمو	grew	cut	يقطع	cut
catch	يمسك	caught	break	يكسر	broke

Expressions and Phrases

The richest man ...	أغنى رجل ...	One day, ...	يومًا ما ...
a broken wing	جناح مكسور	Don't worry, ...	لا تقلق، ...
look after = care for	يعتني بـ ...	fly away	يطير بعيدًا
cut one open	قطع واحدة وفتحها	Here is	تفضل
climb up	يتسلق	look for	يبحث عن
go back	يعود	look down	ينظر لأسفل

Definitions

jealous	feeling unhappy because someone has what you want الشعور بالتعاسة لأن شخصًا ما لديه ما تريد.
reward	something you get for doing a good job or being helpful شيء تحصل عليه مقابل قيامك بعمل جيد أو تقديم المساعدة.



Look and read: أنظر واقرأ:

The Beginning

Once, there were two brothers who were very different. The older brother was the richest man in the village. He was rich, but he always wanted more money. The younger brother wasn't rich, but he was kind and shared what he had with his friends.

ذات مرة، كان هناك شقيقان مختلفان تمامًا. كان الأخ الأكبر هو أغنى رجل فى القرية. لقد كان غنيًا، لكنه كان دائمًا يريد المزيد من المال. الأخ الأصغر لم يكن غنيًا، لكنه كان طيبًا ويشارك ما لديه مع أصدقائه.

The Middle

One day, the younger brother found a bird with a broken wing. "Don't worry, little bird," he said. "I will look after you." He cared for the bird all winter, and when the bird was strong again, he said, "You can fly away now." "First, I want to give you a reward," said the bird. "Plant this seed in your garden and look after it like you looked after me."
The brother planted the seed and watched it grow into a huge plant with big, orange vegetables. When the brother cut one open, it was full of gold and silver! He was now the richest man in the village!

يومًا ما، وجد الأخ الأصغر طائرًا جناحه مكسور. «لا تقلق أيها الطائر الصغير» قال. «أنا سوف أعتنى بك». كان يعتنى بالطائر طوال فصل الشتاء، وعندما كان الطائر قويًا مجددا، قال «يمكنك الطيران بعيدًا الآن». «أولا، أريد أن أعطيك مكافأة» قال الطائر. «ازرع هذه البذرة فى حديقتك واعتنِ بها كما اعتنيت بى.» زرع الأخ البذرة وشاهدها تنمو لتصبح نباتًا ضخمًا مع خضروات برتقالية كبيرة. وعندما قطع الأخ واحدة، كانت مليئة بالذهب والفضة! الآن أصبح أغنى رجل فى القرية!

The older brother was jealous. He went to his brother's house, and his brother told him about the bird. The next day, the older brother caught a sparrow and broke its wing. He said, "I'll look after you, then you can give me a reward." He looked after the bird, and when it was strong, he said, "Now I want my reward." The little bird replied, "Here is your reward. Plant this seed and look after it well."

كان الأخ الأكبر غيورًا. فذهب إلى بيت أخيه فأخبره أخوه عن الطائر. فى اليوم التالى، أمسك الأخ الأكبر بعصفور وكسر جناحه. وقال، سأعتنى بك، ثم يمكن أن تعطينى مكافأة» . اعتنى بالطائر وعندما أصبح أقوى، قال «الآن أريد مكافأتى». فأجابه الطائر الصغير، «ها هى مكافأتك. ازرع هذه البذرة واعتنى بها جيدا».

The End

The older brother planted the seed, and soon a thick, tall plant grew up and up to the moon. The brother climbed up the plant to look for his reward. But when he reached the moon, the plant disappeared. He was alone, and he couldn't go back.
The older brother didn't find any gold. So now, he looks down from the moon, and watches his kind, younger brother living happily and helping others.

زرع الأخ الأكبر البذرة، وسرعان ما نما نبات طويل و سميك ووصل إلى القمر. تسلق الأخ النبات ليبحث عن مكافأته. ولكن عندما وصل إلى القمر اختفى النبات. لقد كان وحيدًا، ولم يتمكن من العودة. ولم يجد الأخ الأكبر أى ذهب. والآن ينظر إلى الأسفل من القمر، ويشاهد أخيه الأصغر يعيش فى سعادة ويساعد الآخرين.

Check point

Choose the correct answer:

1 What did the older brother always want? ....

2 What did the bird give the younger brother? ....

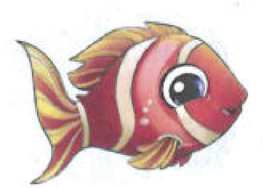


D Pronunciation

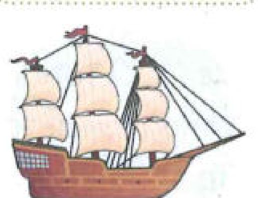


Listen, point, and say: استمع، أشر وقل:

/sh/


fish
سمكة


shoe
حذاء


ship
سفينة


wash
يغسل


cash
نقدى

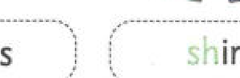




shop
محل


sheep
خروف


dishes
أطباق

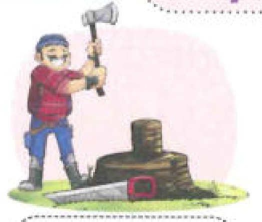


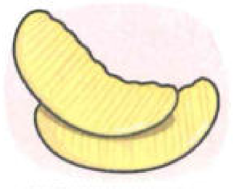

shirt
قميص


shells
صدف

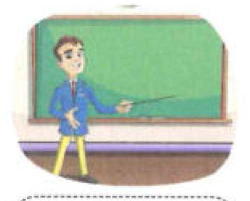
/ch/

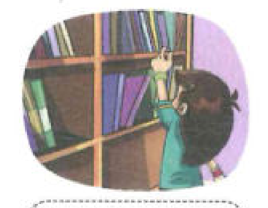

rich
غنى


chop
يقطع

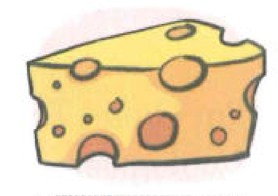

chip
رقاقة بطاطس


lunch
غداء

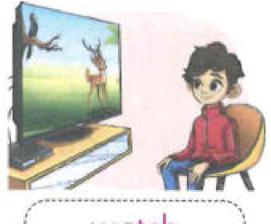

teacher
معلم

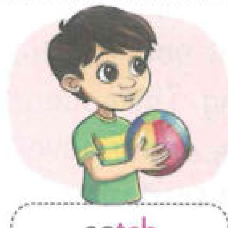

reach
يصل


chicken
دجاجة


cheese
جبن

/tch/


watch
يشاهد


catch
يلتقط


kitchen
مطبخ



• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

10

1. To feel sure about your abilities means ".............................." .
   a) socialize b) confidence c) fundraising d) volunteering
2. ".............................." means collecting money for a charity.
   a) Interview b) Rewarding c) Fundraising d) Community
3. Make a/an .... and follow it to make your work easier.
   a) timetable b) organization c) charity d) event
4. You should .... in the school activities to make new friends.
   a) deliver b) receive c) participate d) welcome
5. To ".............................." means to help others because you have received so much.
   a) look after b) care for c) give back d) fly away
6. When you feel unhappy because someone has what you want, you are ....
   a) rich b) little c) rewarding d) jealous
7. A ".............................." is something you get for doing a good job or being helpful.
   a) trip b) reward c) donation d) timetable
8. My dad likes to .... wood.
   a) chop b) cook c) catch d) wash
9. They .... waited for the train.
   a) kind b) happy c) quick d) patiently
10. To ".............................." is to spend time with people in a friendly way.
    a) confidence b) fundraising c) socialize d) give back

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

4

skills – socialize – confidence – volunteering – charity

I'm Omar. I really like ....(1)......... . I learn many important ....(2)......... when I volunteer. I learn how to ....(3)......... and make friends with people who I don't usually meet. Volunteering gives me ....(4)......... too. It is also good to give back to my community and help it get the money it needs.

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

5

My favorite story is "Two Brothers, Two Rewards". It's about two brothers. The older brother was very rich. The younger brother wasn't rich. The younger brother found a bird with a broken wing. The younger brother cared for the bird all winter. The bird became strong again, and it gave the man a reward. It was a seed. He planted in the garden, and the seed grew, and it was full of gold and silver. The older brother was jealous; he wanted a reward too, so he broke a bird's wing. The bird gave him a seed, but the seed made him reach the moon and be alone.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 The story is about two ....

a) sisters b) friends c) brothers d) cousins

2 The younger brother wasn't ....

a) rich b) happy c) kind d) poor

3 The younger brother found a bird with a broken ....

a) hand b) foot c) nose d) wing

B Answer the following questions:

4 What did the bird give the younger brother?

....

5 How did the older brother feel?

....

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: 4

1 the – talked – They – quietly – classroom – in.

....

2 help – you – Volunteer – can – if – and.

....

3 the guitar – She – beautifully – plays – and – the piano.

....

4 volunteering – first – When – she – start – did?

....

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets: 8

1 I think if I study (hardly) ...., I will pass the exam.

2 They waited (patient) .... for the bus.

3 He sang (beautiful) .... at the wedding.

4 Please, could you speak (quiet) ....? I have a headache.

5 Ola wrote (fasting) .... in her book.

6 They were late, so they walked (quick) ....

7 They shouted (angry) .... at each other.

8 Adam doesn't like playing football. He plays (bad) ....

6 Punctuate the following: 2

1 the older brother was jealous ....

2 how did you start volunteering ....



Lessons 4 & 5
Writing & Project





استمع وقل:

Main vocabulary

biography	سيرة ذاتية	volunteering	التطوع	volunteer event	حدث تطوعى
charity event	حدث خيرى	social sciences	العلوم الاجتماعية	fundraising event	حدث جمع تبرعات
community worker	ناشط اجتماعى	environment	البيئة	fundraiser	جامع التبرعات

Extra vocabulary

elder (adj.)	أكبر سنًّا	neighbor	جار	shopping	التسوق
preparatory school	مدرسة إعدادى	university	جامعة	playground	ملعب
award	جائزة / مكافأة	timeline	خط زمنى	waste	مخلفات
local (adj.)	محلى	boring (adj.)	ممل	surprised (adj.)	مندهش
children's charity	جمعية خيرية للأطفال	plastic (adj.)	بلاستيكى		

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعـــال منتظمـة

Present		Past	Present		Past
organize	ينظم	organized	raise	يجمع التبرعات	raised
reduce	يقلل	reduced	respect	يحترم	respected
call	يتصل	called	recycle	يعيد التدوير	recycled
protect	يحمى	protected	offer	يعرض	offered

Expressions and Phrases

participate in	يشارك فى	ealry life	حياته المبكرة
was born in	وُلد فى	as a child	كطفل
raise money for	يجمع التبرعات لـ	Youth Give Back	حركة الشباب لرد الجميل
so successful that	ناجح جدًّا لدرجة أن	"2020 Community Worker" award	جائزة الناشط المجتمعى لعام ٢٠٢٠
run a charity for	يدير جمعية خيرية لـ	date of birth	تاريخ الميلاد
polite to	مؤدب مع	ways to	طرق لـ
do jobs for them	تقوم بالمهام من أجلهم	make the world a better place	يجعل العالم مكانًا أفضل



Writing



Look and read: انظر واقرأ:

Fareeda Hassan: A Biography فريدة حسن: سيرة ذاتية

Early Life الحياة المبكرة

Fareeda Hassan was born in Alexandria in 1994. As a child, Fareeda helped her mom buy her elder neighbors' shopping.

ولدت فريدة حسن فى الإسكندرية عام ١٩٩٤. عندما كانت طفلة، ساعدت فريدة والدتها فى شراء مشتريات جيرانها الأكبر سنًا.

Volunteering at School التطوع فى المدرسة

Fareeda started preparatory school in 2006. Here she participated in her first volunteer event. She and a team of volunteers did a beach clean-up. In 2010, she organized her first charity event delivering food boxes to families in the community.

بدأت فريدة الدراسة الإعدادية فى عام ٢٠٠٦. وهنا شاركت فى أول حدث تطوعى لها. قامت هى وفريق من المتطوعين بتنظيف الشاطئ. فى عام ٢٠١٠، نظمت أول حدث خيرى لها لتوصيل صناديق الطعام للعائلات فى المجتمع.

The University Years سنوات الجامعة

In 2012, Fareeda went to university to study social sciences. Here she organized a fundraising event to raise money for a new playground.

فى عام ٢٠١٢، ذهبت فريدة إلى الجامعة لدراسة العلوم الاجتماعية. هنا قامت بتنظيم حدث لجمع التبرعات لجمع الأموال من أجل ملعب جديد.

Working in Charities العمل فى الجمعيات الخيرية

In 2017, Fareeda started her first job as a community volunteer leader in Cairo. Since then, she has helped many people. In 2020, she led a "Youth Give Back" project in six cities in Egypt. It was so successful that she won the "2020 Community Worker" award. Today, she runs a charity for children.

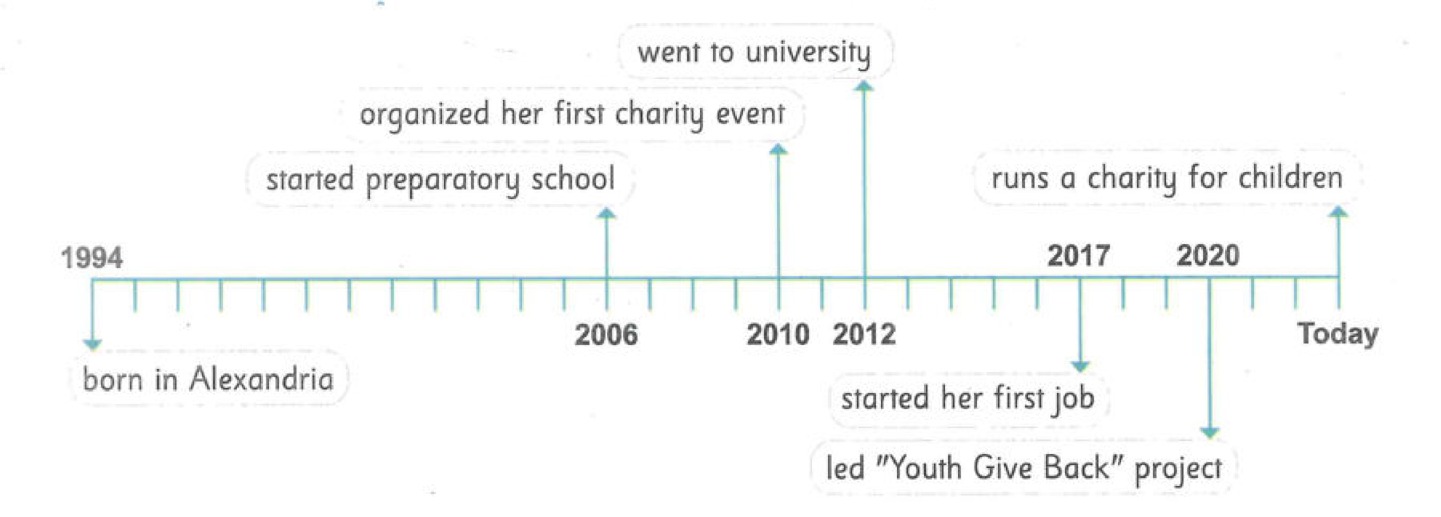
فى عام ٢٠١٧، بدأت فريدة وظيفتها الأولى كقائدة متطوعة مجتمعية فى القاهرة. ومنذ ذلك الحين، ساعدت الكثير من الناس. فى عام ٢٠٢٠، قادت مشروع «Youth Give Back» فى ست مدن فى مصر. وقد حقق نجاحًا كبيرًا لدرجة أنها فازت بجائزة العامل المجتمعى لعام ٢٠٢٠. واليوم، تدير مؤسسة خيرية للأطفال.

How to write a biography

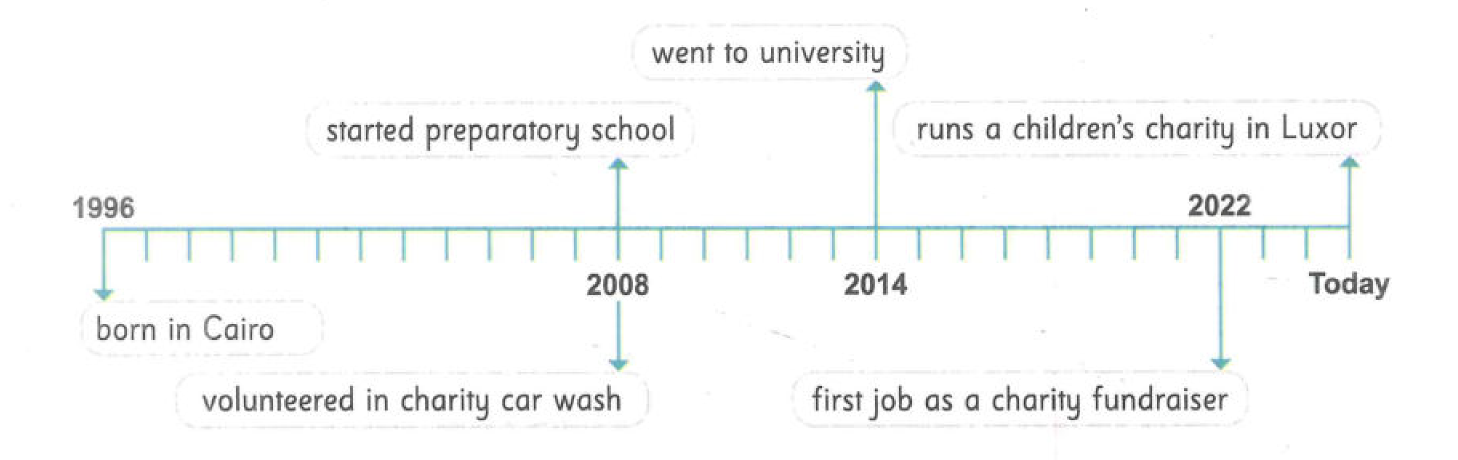
- Write the information in date order. اكتب المعلومات بالترتيب الزمنى.
- Include events with dates. اشتمل على الأحداث مع التواريخ.
- Divide the information into sections. قسّم المعلومات إلى أقسام.
- Add headings for each section. أضف عنوانًا لكل قسم.
- Write in the past tense. اكتب فى زمن الماضى البسيط.

Tip! When writing a biography, it helps to make a timeline of events, starting from the date of birth. Add important events and their dates to the timeline. This helps you organize the information in the correct order.

عند كتابة السيرة الذاتية، يساعدك وضع جدول زمنى للأحداث، بدءًا من تاريخ الميلاد. أضف الأحداث المهمة وتواريخها إلى الجدول الزمنى. وهذا يساعدك على تنظيم المعلومات بالترتيب الصحيح.



e.g. Plan a biography for Fares Shawky. Create a timeline in your book using the information below:



Fares Shawky: A biography

....

....

....

....





Project



Look and read: انظر واقرأ:

Ways to Be a Good Citizen طرق لتكون مواطن صالح

There are lots of ways you can volunteer to help your community.

هناك الكثير من الطرق التى يمكنك خلالها التطوع لمساعدة مجتمعك.

Respect Others: Be polite and kind to your neighbors. Help people who are old or sick. Call your neighbors to ask how you can help. You can offer to do their shopping or do jobs for them at home.



احترم الآخرين: كن مهذبًا ولطيفًا مع جيرانك. ساعد الأشخاص المسنين أو المرضى. اتصل بجيرانك واسألهم كيف يمكنك المساعدة. يمكنك عرض القيام بالتسوق أو القيام بالوظائف لهم فى المنزل.

Help the Community: Volunteer at a local charity event or help out on a community project. Volunteering isn't boring. It's interesting. You'll be surprised how much you enjoy it.

ساعد المجتمع: تطوع فى حدث محلى أو ساعد فى مشروع مجتمعى. العمل التطوعى ليس مملاً. إنه شيّق. سوف تفاجأ بمدى استمتاعك به.

Protect the Environment: Reduce waste and help the environment. Don't use plastic bags or plastic bottles. If you have plastic bottles at home, recycle them. Let's all be good citizens and make the world a better place!



احمِ البيئة: قلل النفايات وساعد البيئة. لا تستخدم الأكياس البلاستيكية. إذا كان لديك زجاجات بلاستيكية فى المنزل، أعد تدويرها. لنكن جميعًا مواطنين صالحين ونجعل العالم مكانًا أفضل!





• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

8

1 Fareeda Hassan was .... in Alexandria.
a) organized b) reduced c) called d) born

2 Be .... and kind to your neighbors.
a) bad b) annoying c) angry d) polite

3 Fareeda organized a fundraising event to to .... money for a new playground.
a) offer b) respect c) raise d) call

4 If you have plastic bottles at home, ... them.
a) protect b) raise b) recycle d) organize

5 Today, Fareeda .... a charity for children.
a) runs b) studies c) does d) goes

6 Young people should help .... people.
a) elder b) bad c) boring d) important

7 Volunteering isn't .... It's interesting.
a) good b) well c) boring d) nice

8 Fareeda was so .... that she won the "2020 Community Worker" award.
a) surprised b) successful c) interesting d) polite

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

4

river – volunteer – neighbors – waste – environment

You can do many things to be a good citizen. You can be polite and kind to your ....(1)............. You can help old and sick people. You can ....(2)............ at local charities or help out on community projects. You can reduce ....(3)............ and help the environment. Don't use or throw plastic bags and bottles. You can clean the ....(4)............ around you.

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

5

Fareeda Hassan was born in Alexandria in 1994. As a child, Fareeda helped her mom buy her elder neighbors' shopping. In 2006, she participated in her first volunteer event. She and a team of volunteers did a beach clean-up. In 2012, Fareeda went to university to study social sciences. Here, she organized a fundraising event to raise money for a new playground. In 2020, she led a "Youth Give Back" project in six cities in Egypt. It was so successful that she won the "2020 Community Worker" award. Today, she runs a charity for children.



A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 Fareeda started her first volunteer event in ....

a) 1994 b) 2006 c) 2012 d) 2020

2 Fareeda organized a fundraising event to raise ...... for a new playground.

a) clothes b) toys c) money d) books

3 Now, Fareeda runs a .... for children.

a) school b) hospital c) charity d) playground

B Answer the following questions:

4 What project did Fareeda lead in 2020?

....

5 What award did Fareeda win?

....

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: (4)

1 Volunteering – is – boring, – interesting – isn't – it.

....

2 in Alexandria – Fareeda Hassan – born – was – 1994 – in.

....

3 waste – Reduce – help – and – environment – the.

....

4 polite – to – Be – kind – your neighbors – and.

....

5 Punctuate the following: (2)

1 What award did fareeda win?

....

2 let's all be good citizens

....

6 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements: (5)

"A biography of a famous community worker"

(Who are they? – What do they do?)

....

....

....

....





Unit 11 REVIEW

Vocabulary

volunteer	متطوع	project	مشروع
community	مجتمع	ideas	أفكار
habitats	بيئات/ أماكن المعيشة	kindergarten class	حضانة / روضة الأطفال
paintings	رسومات	kind to (adj.)	طيب مع
organization	منظمة		

Pronunciation

/sh/

fish · shoe · ship · wash · cash

shop · sheep · dishes · shirt · shells

/ch/

rich · chop · chip · lunch · teacher

reach · chicken · cheese

/tch/

watch · catch · kitchen

Language Focus

1. We use "to + a verb in the base form" to explain why we do something.

to + (inf.) مصدر الفعل (الفعل بدون أي إضافات).

e.g. He uses his computer to do his homework.

2. We also use "to + a verb in the base form" to answer questions with "Why".

e.g. A: Why do you use a multi-grip?
B: To open jars.

3. Adverbs are used to describe how things happen or are done.

We can make adverbs by adding:

لمعظم الصفات (-ly)

e.g. quick ⟶ quickly
bad ⟶ badly
quiet ⟶ quietly

الصفات المنتهية بـ (حرف ساكن + y)، يتم حذف ال (y) وإضافة (ily)

e.g. angry ⟶ angrily
happy ⟶ happily

بعض الصفات لا تتبع القاعدة (irregular)

e.g. fast ⟶ fast
hard ⟶ hard





Lesson 1

متطوع	....	رسومات	....	قمامة	....
مشروع	....	طيب مع	....	متوتر	....
مجتمع	....	مؤسسة	....	خاص	....
أفكار	....	حديقة خضراوات	....	جار	....
بيئات / أماكن المعيشة	....	طازج	....	المتاجر	....
حضانة / روضة الأطفال	....	محبوب	....		....

Lesson 2

زجاج	....	قفازات	....
كاميرا الحياة البرية	....	مركز	....
معدن	....	متطوع	....
يعصر	....	مقبض متعدد الاستخدامات	....
برطمانات	....	الأرض	....
عصا	....	لاقِط (خُطاف)	....
الحياة البرية	....	غابة	....

Lesson 3

مقابلة شخصية	....	فضة	....	مال	....
التطوع	....	يلتقط	....	ذهب	....
المجتمع	....	نقدى	....	سميك	....
جمع التبرعات	....	صدف	....	سفينة	....
مختلف	....	جناح	....	القمر	....
مكافأة	....	جمعية خيرية	....	ضخم	....
غيران	....	مُجزى	....	يصل	....
أغنى	....	مواطنون	....	مكسور	....
أطباق	....	الثقة	....	غنى	....

Lessons 4 & 5

سيرة ذاتية	....	جامع التبرعات	....
التطوع	....	أكبر سنًّا	....
حدث تطوعى	....	مدرسة إعدادى	....
حدث خيرى	....	جامعة	....
العلوم الإجتماعية	....	مخلَّفات	....
حدث جمع تبرعات	....	مملٌ	....
ناشط اجتماعى	....	مندهش	....
البيئة	....	جمعية خيرية للأطفال	....

تأكد من حفظك لكلمات الدروس قبل البدء فى إجابة اختبار الوحدة.

WRITING TIME



How to write about Community Help Projects:

Answer these questions:

1. Where did you start the project?
2. Why did you start it?
3. What were the ideas for the project?
4. What did some people choose to do?
5. What did you choose to do?

At school, we started a Community Help project. We started it to support other people or things in our community. There were lots of ideas, like starting a vegetable garden at school or volunteering to clean trash from the river. Some people chose to clean up the trash so that animals' habitats are safer. I chose to start an after-school club to teach children football skills.

How to write about tools we use to help the community:

1. When we + مجال مساعدة المجتمع + we use + اسم الاداة.
2. It is + وصف الاداة .
3. We use it to + فيما تستخدم تلك الأداة.
4. طريقة استخدام الأداة.

When we do a beach clean-up, we use the grabber. It's a long metal stick with two fingers at the end. We use it to pick up the trash. It's great fun to use. The fingers open and close when you squeeze the handle at the top. You open and close the fingers to pick up the trash, then you drop it in the bag.

How to write a biography:

- اسم الشخص + was born in + اسم مكان وسنة الميلاد.
- He/She started school in + سنة الدراسة.
- He/She first + بداية أعماله المميزة.
- In + تاريخ , + he / she + أهم إنجازاته أو اختراعاته.
- Today, he/she + المجال الذى يعمل به الآن.

Fareeda Hassan was born in Alexandria in 1994. She started preparatory school in 2006. She first participated in volunteer events in the same year when she and a team did a beach clean-up. In 2010, she organized her first charity event delivering food boxes to the community. In 2020, she won the "2020 Community Worker" award. Today, she runs a charity for children.

لكي تتمكن من كتابة الموضوعات بشكل مميز، اتبع هذه الخطوات.

Unit 11 STUDENT'S BOOK CORNER

1 Match the words in the box to their meanings:

donate – participate – support – volunteer

1. to do things that help a particular person or group: ....
2. to take part in something: ....
3. to do a job or activity and not take any money for it: ....
4. to give something away to help a person or organization: ....

2 Put words in order to make sentences:

1. Lama / put / painted / to / a picture / the exhibition. / in

   ....

2. lemonade / to / the market. / in / They / sell / make

   ....

3. by bus / her cousins. / see / Farah / to / traveled

   ....

4. some candy / bought / the movie. / to / We / during / eat

   ....

3 Use the adjectives in the box to make adverbs:

angry – bad – good – fast – quiet

1. Younis hates playing tennis. He plays ....
2. Dalia came first in the running race. She runs really ....
3. Sherif opened the door .... because his little brother was sleeping.
4. Maged's picture of a horse is excellent. He draws very ....
5. I heard two people shouting .... in the street today.

Test Yourself 30

UNIT 11





1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:



1. Omar volunteers to help clean .... from the river.
   (a. fish – b. ships – c. trash – d. boats)
2. Lara helps out in the .... class.
   (a. kindergarten – b. university – c. English – d. reading)
3. Ali and his parents .... lots of toys and paintings.
   (a. supported – b. volunteered – c. donated – d. participated)
4. Youssef and his friends started a .... garden.
   (a. tree – b. flower – c. fruit – d. vegetable)



2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:



1. They like to .... They spend time with people in a friendly way.
   a) socialize b) confidence c) donate d) support
2. To "............................" means to take part in something.
   a) respect b) participate c) volunteer d) organize
3. We used the nature camera to .... how many animals and birds we see.
   a) protect b) install c) record d) carry
4. You press a .... to make something happen.
   a) stick b) button c) handle d) mask

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:



teenagers – charity – socialize – skills – support

Volunteering is very important and helpful to the community and to the people who volunteer. Volunteering can help ....(1)............ . They learn many important life ....(2)............ when they volunteer. Volunteering can teach them to ....(3)............ . and make friends. Volunteering can give them confidence. When they volunteer to collect money for a ....(4)............ , this helps the community. Volunteering is fun and teenagers can enjoy it.

4 Read the text and then answer the questions: 5

To be a good citizen and helpful in your community, you should be polite and kind to your neighbors and everyone in your community. You should help old people. You can do their shopping or do jobs for them at homes. You should also keep your environment clean. You can volunteer to clean up beaches, rivers, and parks. You can reduce waste. This also helps the environment. Don't use plastic bags or plastic bottles. You can recycle them. Let's all be good citizens and make the world a better place.

A Choose the correct word from a, b, c, or d:

1 The general idea of the text is about how to be a ....

a) community worker b) good citizen c) fundraiser d) volunteer

2 You should be .... and kind to your neighbors.

a) bad b) annoying c) polite d) boring

3 You should help .... people.

a) important b) young c) old d) strong

B Answer the following questions:

4 What can a person do to help the environment? ....

5 What can you do with plastic bags and bottles? ....

Writing

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: 3

1 local – Volunteer – event – a – charity – at. ....

2 a – children – Fareeda Hassan – for – charity – runs. ....

3 was – the village – man – He – the richest – in. ....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets: 2

1 He waited (patient) .... for the train to leave.

2 We use the controller to (plays) .... a computer game.

7 Punctuate the following: 1

fareeda Hassan was born in alexandria in 1994. ....

8 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements: 5

"Helping your community"

volunteer – donate

....

....

....

....

Assess your progress ★★★★★

< 50%	50 : 64%	65 : 84%	85 : 100%
Study again	Practice more	Solve more exams	Well done!

Unit 11 AI-AZHAR CORNER



1 Read and complete the dialog:

grow – community – volunteer – Why – vegetables

Malek : .... do you want to volunteer?
Omar : I want to help my ....
Malek : Where are you going to volunteer?
Omar : I am going to .... in the vegetable garden.
Malek : What are you going to .... in the garden?
Omar : I am going to grow .... and fruit.

2 Read and circle the odd one out:

1 donating	better	participating	fundraising	....
2 bought	went	had	respect	....
3 happy	good	angrily	bad	....
4 joined	grew	cleaned	decided	....
5 volunteer	fundraiser	worker	amazing	....

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 I like to .... I don't take money for helping.
a) volunteer b) donate c) support d) participate
2 I use a key .... open the car.
a) for b) so c) to d) by
3 We can .... a funny film.
a) clean b) chop c) watch d) fish
4 .... are you using a knife?
a) What b) Which c) Who d) Why
5 "............................." is collecting money for a charity.
a) Socializing b) Fundraising c) Donating d) Volunteering
6 She uses a camera .... take photos.
a) to b) and c) so d) for
7 They have lots of money. They are ....
a) angry b) poor c) rich d) annoying
8 A: .... does this button do? B: This turns on the computer.
a) When b) What c) When d) How
9 "............................." is to take part in something.
a) Participate b) Donate c) Volunteer d) Support
10 She plays the drums ....
a) angry b) kind c) quick d) beautifully

APRIL MONTHLY TEST







1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:



1. Fareeda Hassan was born in .... in 1994.
   (a. Cairo – b. Alexandria – c. Luxor – d. Aswan)
2. She started .... in 2006.
   (a. kindergarten – b. primary school – c. preparatory school – d. university)
3. In .... , she organized delivering food boxes to the community.
   (a. 2006 – b. 2008 – c. 2010 – d. 2020)
4. Today, she runs a .... for children.
   (a. school – b. charity – c. hospital – d. club)



2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:



1. When you collect money for charity, it's called ....
   a) economy b) fundraising c) sharing d) socializing
2. A .... helps you move your character in a video game.
   a) button b) screen c) joystick d) tablet
3. The story was .... It's true and it happened in the past.
   a) sensible b) real c) similar d) careful
4. When something is perfect or excellent, it's ....
   a) sustainable b) simple c) respectful d) ideal

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:



Community – support – activity – volunteered – garden

Tamer is a student at "Young Pharaohs Primary School". The school started a project called " ....(1)............ Help". The students had to choose something they could do to ....(2)............ other people. Some students planted a vegetable ....(3)............ in the school. Other students ....(4)............ to help clean the trash from the river. Many children participated in the project. They loved joining in and helping the community.

4 Read the text and then answer the questions:



Egypt is an amazing country. There are many historical places to visit, as well as stores, markets, and museums. People can go snorkeling, go on a desert safari, or climb mountains in the Red Sea. However, eco-tourism is becoming more and more popular in Egypt. It's more sustainable than traditional tourism. This means it's designed to protect nature and help reduce pollution. In eco-tourism, people can go bird watching, hiking, and enjoying wildlife activities. What makes eco-tourism special is that tourists usually stay in simple accommodation and travel in ways that don't cause pollution.

A Choose the correct word from a, b, c, or d:

1 The main idea of the text is ....

a) accommodation b) wildlife c) hiking d) eco-tourism

2 People can go snorkeling in ....

a) Cairo b) The Red Sea c) Nile River d) Luxor

3 Eco-tourism helps reduce ....

a) money b) pollution c) bird watching d) hiking

B Answer the following questions:

4 What does being sustainable mean? ....

5 What is special about eco-tourism? ....

Writing

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

3

1 scare – You – mustn't – and – birds – animals. ....

2 I'm – eat – snack – If – a – hungry, - I'll. ....

3 gloves – wear – does – she – Why – her? ....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

2

1 She is wearing a helmet to (protecting) .... her head.

2 If you practice hard, you (winning) .... the race.

7 Punctuate the following:

1

- dalida volunteers at a day center for old people ....

8 Write a blog post of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements:

5

"Protecting animal habitats"

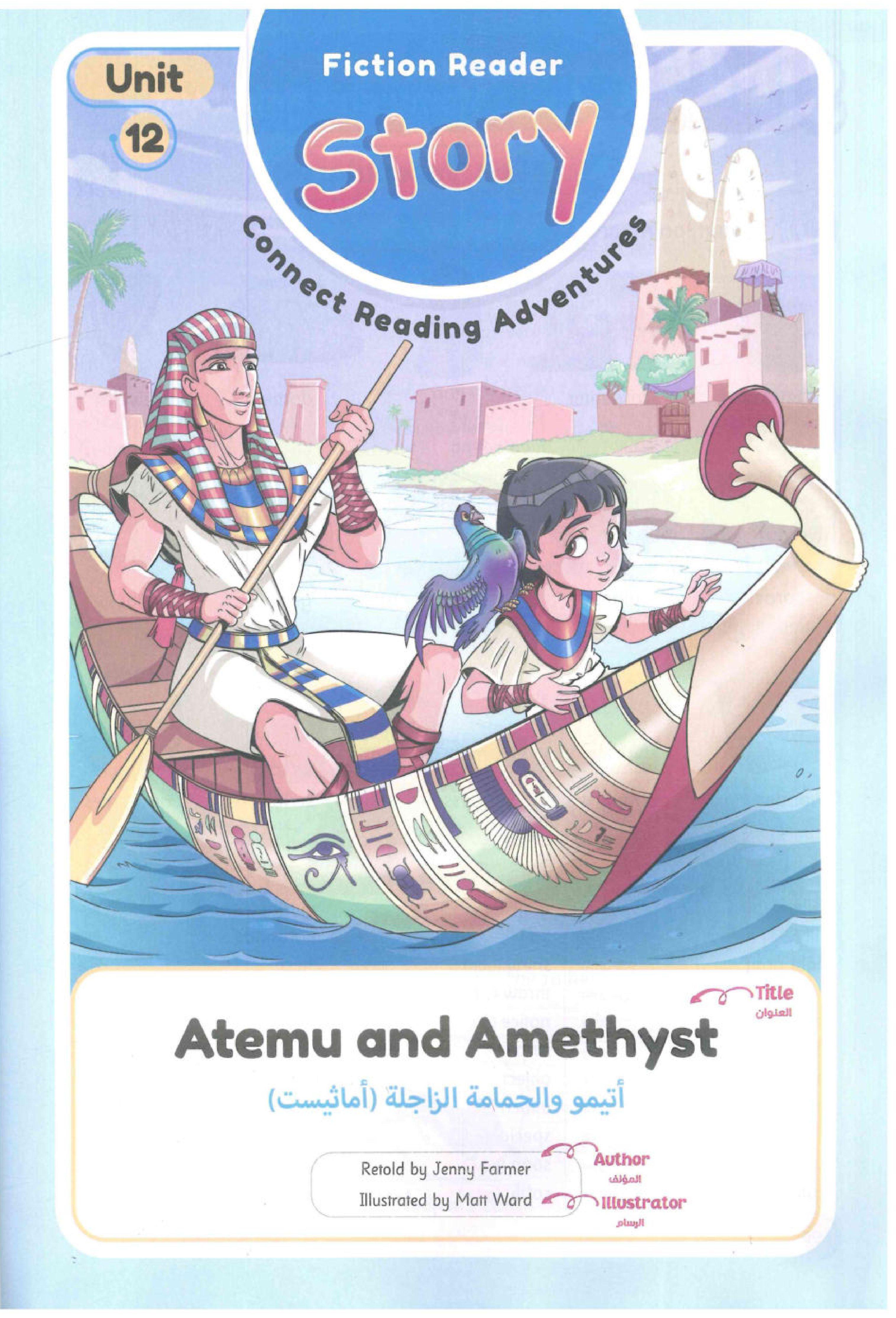
(What do animals need to live? – How can you protect animal habitats?)

....

....

....

....


Unit
12
Fiction Reader
Story
Connect Reading Adventures
Title
العنوان
Atemu and Amethyst
أتيمو والحمامة الزاجلة (أماثيست)
Retold by Jenny Farmer
Author
المؤلف
Illustrated by Matt Ward
Illustrator
الرسام



Story

Atemu and Amethyst

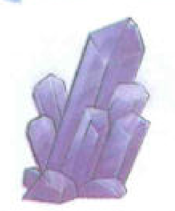


A Main Vocabulary





Listen, point, and say: استمع، أشر وقل:



amethyst
الجَمَشْت/الأماثيست (حجر كريم)



carpenter
نجار



coo
هديل (الصوت الذى يصدره الحمام)



dome
قبة



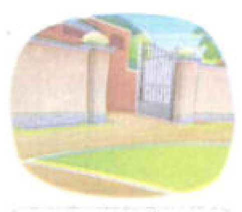
jewelry
مجوهرات



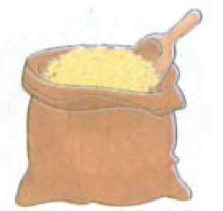
order
طلب (طلب تجارى)



pigeon
حمامة



yard
فناء



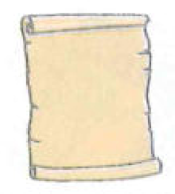
grain
حبوب



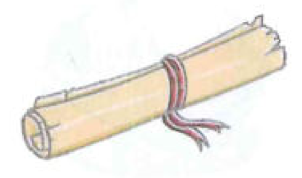
flock
سرب



wooden box
صندوق خشبى



papyrus
ورق بردى



message
رسالة



scribe
كاتب



dovecotes
أبراج حمام

Extra Vocabulary

Nile Delta	الدلتا	huge (adj.)	ضخم	nearby (adv.)	مجاور
fill (v.)	يملأ	bowl	وعاء	thousands	الآلاف
light gray	رمادى فاتح	shiny (adj.)	لامع/براق	chest	صدر
call (v.)	ينادى على	throw (v.)	يلقى	hungrily (adv.)	بجوع
suddenly (adv.)	فجأة	notice (v.)	يلاحظ	beak	منقار
dark gray	رمادى غامق	stripes	خطوط	follow (v.)	يتتبع
hurt (adv.)/(v.)	مُصاب/ يُصاب	object	شيء	a piece of	قطعة من
inside (adv.)/(adj.)	داخلى/ بالداخل	attach (v.)	يُلحق بـ	trip	رحلة قصيرة
holes	فتحات	special (adj.)	خاص	large (adj.)	كبير/ واسع
customer	عميل/ زبون	soon (adv.)	قريبًا	exactly (adv.)	بالظبط
cute (adj.)	لطيف (جذاب)	softly (adv.)	برقة/ بنعومة	letter	رسالة/ خطاب

Expressions and Phrases

once upon a time	كان يا ماكان	along, long time ago	في قديم الزمان
(someone) called......	شخص ما يُدعى (يُسمى)	looked up	بحث
one day	يومًا ما	come out	يخرج
coming down	ينزل للأسفل	couldn't believe his eyes	لا يستطيع تصديق عينيه (تعبير للدهشة)
got to the fields	يصل إلى الحقول	fly away	يطير بعيدًا
come in	يدخل	What's wrong ...?	ما المشكلة؟
pick up	يلتقط	poor	مسكين (تعبير لشخص أصابه مكروه)
quiet sound	صوت هادئ	That's very clever!	هذه طريقة ذكية جدًّا!
carrier pigeon	حمام زاجل	It was very important for	إنه مهم جدًّا من أجل
Three days later	بعد مرور ثلاثة أيام	For the next week	من أجل الأسبوع القادم
capital city	العاصمة	much better	أحسن بكثير
The last day	اليوم الأخير	At one side	على جانب واحد
Come with me then	تعال معي إذًا	on the boat	على متن قارب
It's time to go	حان وقت الذهاب	oh wow!	أووه وااو ! (تعبير للفرحة)
Good idea!	فكرة رائعة!		



B Story Elements



Read and notice: اقرأ ولاحظ:

Characters الشخصيات

Main characters
الشخصيات الرئيسية



Atemu
أتيمو



Nedjem
نجم



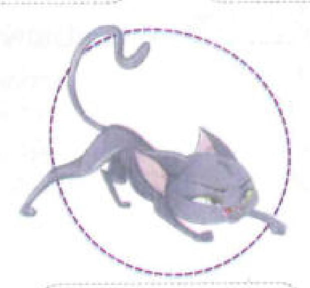
The father
الأب



The mother
الأم



Mr Akhon (The merchant)
السيد آخون (التاجر)



Nedjem's cat
قطة نجم



Amethyst
أماثيست





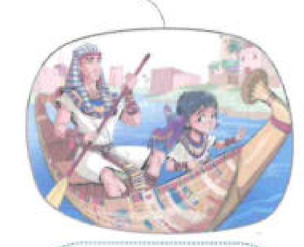
Atemu's house
منزل أتيمو



fields of the village
حقول القرية



Atemu's house yard
فناء منزل أتيمو



on a boat in the Nile
على متن قارب في النيل



Mr Akhon's house
منزل السيد آخون



Amethyst's old house
منزل أماثيست القديم





The Beginning

Atemu found a huge flock of birds in the fields of the village. He noticed a different bird among the other birds. Its wing was hurt. There was something on its leg.

وجد أتيمو سربًا ضخمًا من الطيور في حقول القرية. لاحظ وجود طائر مختلف بين الطيور الأخرى. كان جناحه مصابًا.كان هناك شيء ما على ساقه.



The Middle

Atemu and his father found a wooden box tied to the bird's leg. There was a message inside. They knew it was a carrier pigeon. They knew the message was for a merchant in the city. They wanted to take the bird and the message back to him.

وجد أتيمو ووالده صندوقًا خشبيًا مربوطًا في ساق الطائر. كان يوجد رسالة بداخلها. كان نوعًا من الحمام الزاجل. عرفوا أن الرسالة تخص تاجرًا في المدينة. أرادوا أن يعيدوا الطائر والرسالة إلى التاجر.



The End

The merchant met Atemu and his father. He thanked them and showed them Amethyst's house. Atemu was sad to leave the bird. The merchant let Amethyst stay with Atemu. Atemu was happy.

قابل التاجر أتيمو ووالده. شكرهم التاجر وأخذهم ليروا منزل الطائر أماثيست. كان أتيمو حزينًا لأنه سيترك الطائر. سمح التاجر ببقاء أماثيست عند أتيمو. كان أتيمو سعيدًا.

Moral!

When somebody helps you, you should help them if you can.

عندما يساعدك شخص ما، يجب أن تساعده حين تستطيع ذلك.





Listen, read, and role-play: استمع، اقرأ وتبادل الأدوار:

The Beginning

Once upon a time, a long, long, time ago, a boy called Atemu lived in the Nile Delta. His home was in a small village, and he lived with his parents and his big sister, Nedjem. Atemu was twelve, but he didn't go to school. His father worked as a carpenter. He was teaching Atemu how to make things from wood.

Atemu loved animals, especially birds. He liked to watch the birds that came into his yard. Every day, Atemu gave some grain to the birds. He enjoyed watching them eat. Often, his sister's cat came into the yard and watched the birds, too. It sometimes jumped at the birds, but it never caught them. It was a very slow cat.

كان يا ماكان، في قديم الزمان كان هناك ولد يُدعى أتيمو عاش بالقرب من دلتا النيل. منزله كان في قرية صغيرة وعاش مع والديه وأخته الكبيرة نجم. كان عمر أتيمو اثنى عشر عامًا ولكن لم يكن يذهب إلى المدرسة. عمل والده نجارًا. كان يُعلم أتيمو كيفية صنع أشياء من الخشب. أحب أتيمو الحيوانات بشكل خاص الطيور. كان يحب مراقبة الطيور التي تدخل إلى فناء منزله. كان أتيمو يعطي الطيور بعض الحبوب كل يوم. كان يستمتع بمشاهدتهم وهم يأكلون. في كثير من الأحيان تأتي قطة أخته إلى الفناء وتراقب الطيور أيضًا. أحيانًا تقفز على الطيور ولكن لم تستطع أبدًا الإمساك بهم. لقد كانت قطة بطيئة جدًا.



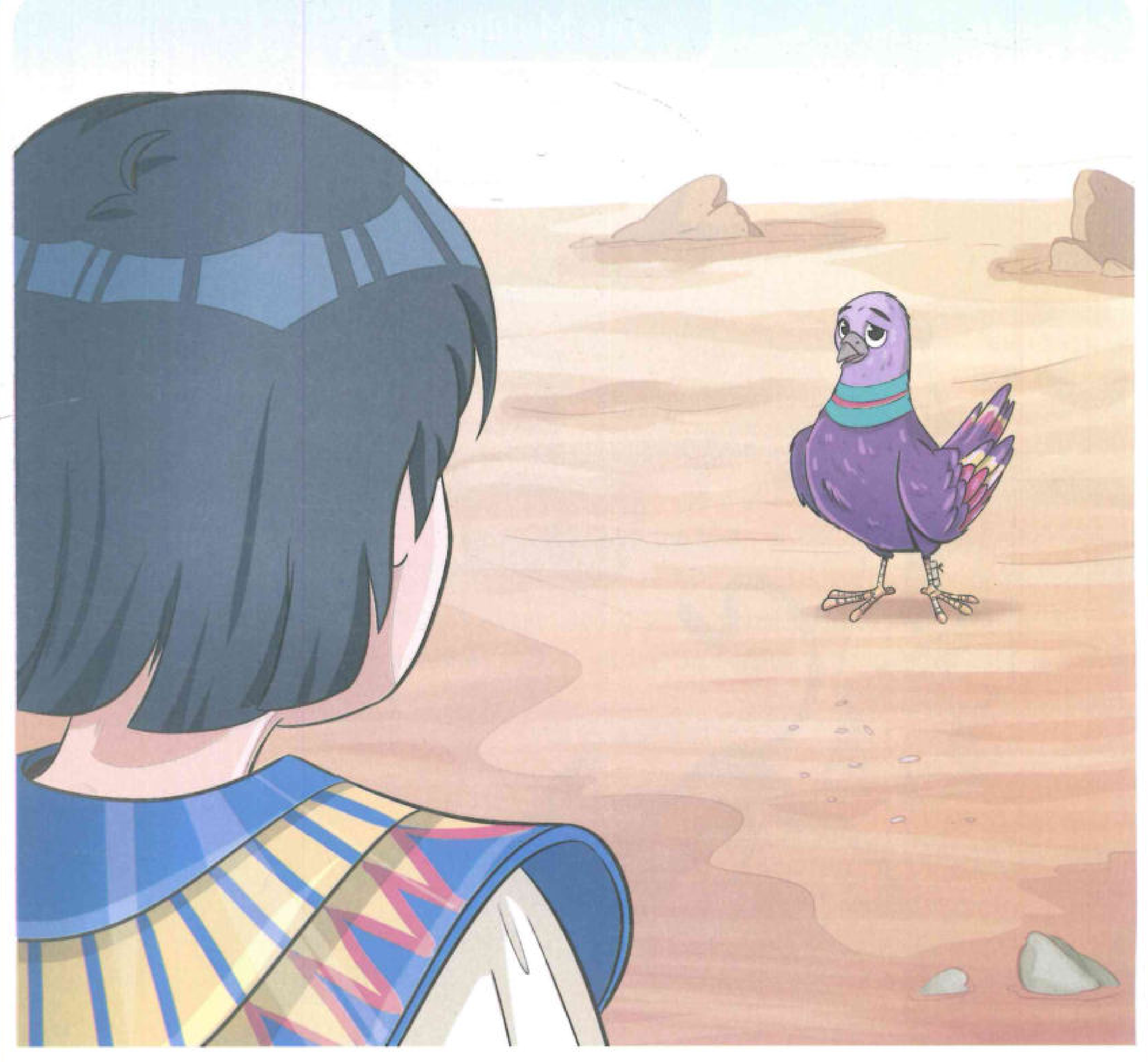
One day in October, Atemu was in the yard when he heard a strange noise. He looked up and saw something amazing. A huge flock of birds were flying over his village. They were coming down to a field nearby.
"Mom! Mom!" shouted Atemu. "There are so many birds! Can I go and see them?" His Mom came out of the house and looked. "Wow!" she said. "Yes, you can go." She filled a bowl with grain. "Here, you are," she said kindly. "You can take this for them."

يومًا ما فى أكتوبر، بينما كان أتيمو فى الفناء سمع صوت ضوضاء غريبًا .بحث وقد رأى شيئًا مذهلًا. كان سرب ضخم من الطيور يطير فوق القرية وهبطوا فى حقل بالجوار. صاح أتيمو «أمى! أمى!» «هناك العديد من الطيور . هل يمكننى الذهاب لرؤيتهم ؟» خرجت أمه من المنزل ونظرت وقالت «واااو!» نعم، يمكنك الذهاب. «قامت بملء وعاء بالحبوب وقالت بعطف» «تفضل،خذ هذا لهم».



When Atemu got to the fields, he couldn't believe his eyes. There were thousands of birds. Every one of them was light gray, with shiny green feathers on its neck and purple feathers on its chest. They were beautiful! They called to each other with a long "whoo" sounds.
Atemu threw the grain to the birds. They ate it hungrily. Then, suddenly, they flew into the sky again. Atemu watched them go.

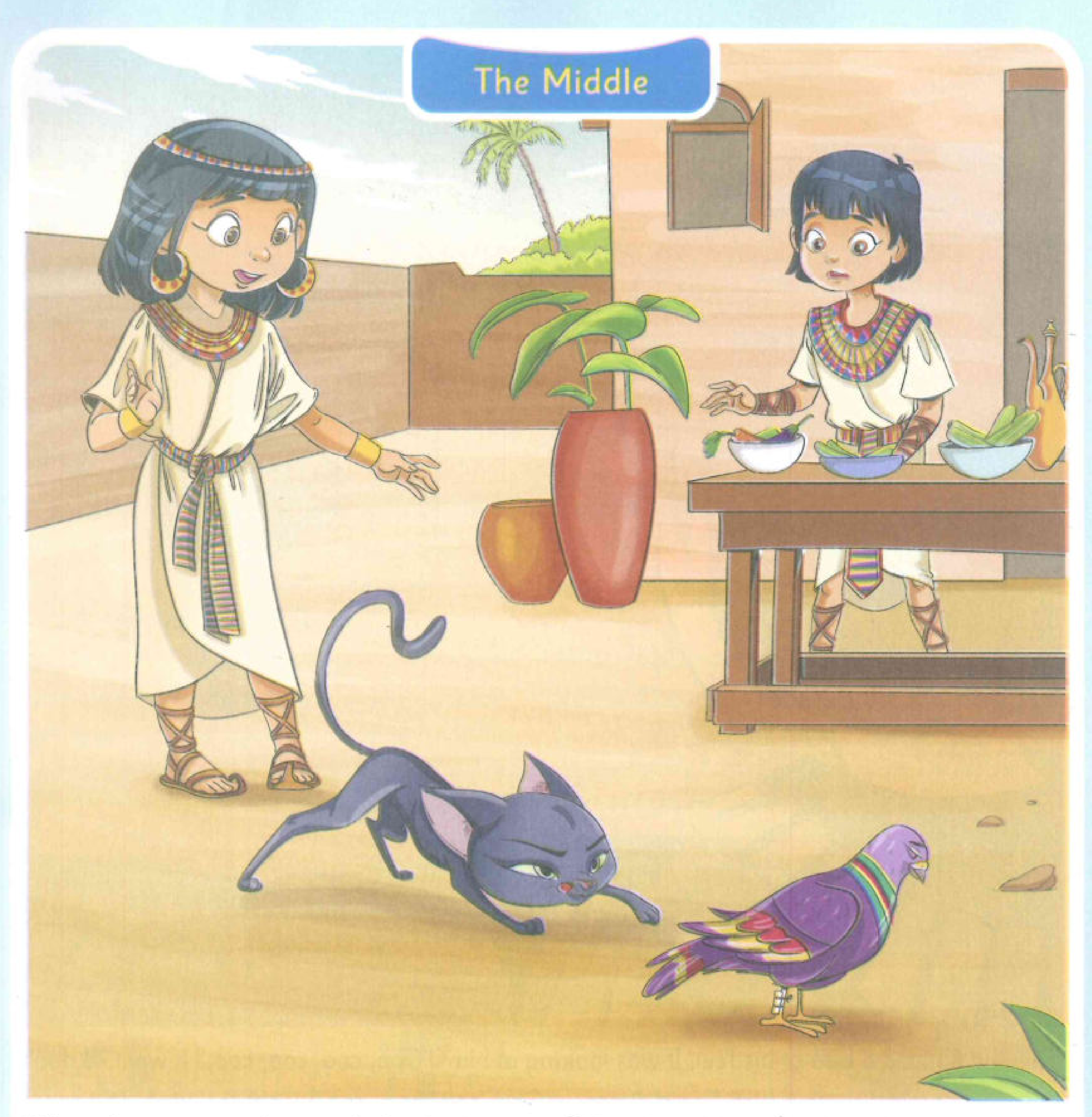
عندما وصل أتيمو للحقول، لم يستطع تصديق عينيه. كان يوجد الآلاف من الطيور. كانت الطيور جميعها لونها رمادى فاتح و يوجد ريش أخضر لامع على رقابهم وريش بنفسجى على صدرهم. بدوا بشكل جميل للغاية. كانوا ينادون بعضهم بأصوات مميزة طويلة «ووووووه».
ألقى أتيمو الحبوب إلى الطيور. أكلوها بجوع . ثم فجأة طاروا إلى السماء مرة أخرى. راقبهم أتيمو وهم يغادرون.



Then he noticed a bird at his feet. It was looking at him. "Coo, coo, coo, coo," it went. "I don't have any grain for you, bird," said Atemu. "Coo, coo, coo, coo," went the bird. The noise was different from the other birds. It looked different too. First, it was bigger. The other birds had yellow beaks, but this bird's beak was dark gray. This bird also had stripes on its wings. Atemu could see something strange on its leg, too. Just then, Atemu heard his mother calling him. Atemu started walking quickly, but he could hear the bird behind him. It was following him! "Why don't you fly with your friends?" said Atemu, but the bird just cooed.

ثم لاحظ طائرًا ما زال يمشي على الأرض. كان ينظر إلى أتيمو و يردد بعضَ الأصوات. قال أتيمو: «لا يوجد لدى أى حبوب لك يا طائر.» بدأ الطائر فى إصدار بعض الأصوات مجددًا. كانت الضوضاء التى يصدرها مختلفة عن باقى الطيور. كان شكله مختلفًا أيضًا. أولًا: كان حجمه أكبر منهم. كان للطيور الأخرى منقار أصفر لكن منقاره هو كان رماديًا غامقًا.كان أيضا يوجد بعض الخطوط على أجنحته. استطاع أتيمو أن يرى شيئًا ما غريبًا على ساقه أيضًا. ثم سمع أتيمو أمه تنادى عليه. سار أتيمو مسرعًا، لكنه استطاع أن يسمع الطائر يسير خلفه. كان يتتبعه! قال أتيمو: «لماذا لا تطير مع أصدقائك؟» لكن ظل يصدر الطائر صوتًا.

The Middle



When Atemu got to his yard, the bird came in after him. He watched it while he cleaned vegetables for dinner. Then he saw Nedjem's cat. It was watching the bird, too. Suddenly, the cat jumped on the bird! But the bird didn't fly away. Nedjem ran and picked up the cat. "You should catch rats and snakes, not birds!" she said.

"What's wrong with that bird? It can't fly," said their mother. "Is it hurt?"

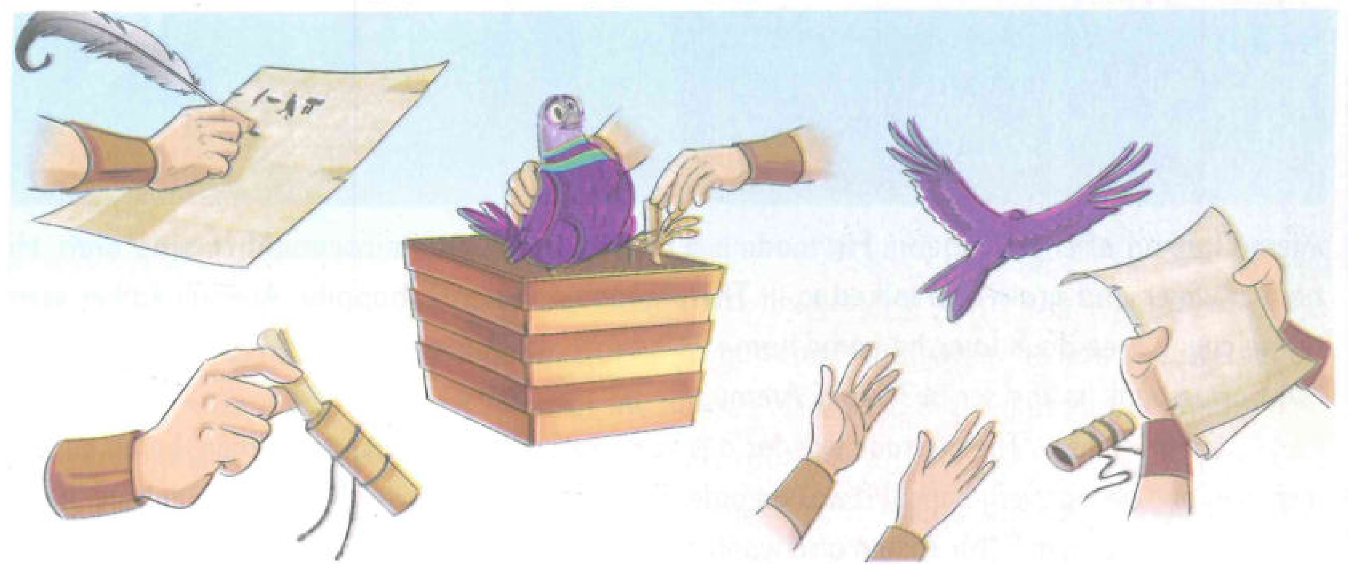
"Maybe!" said Atemu. "It didn't fly with the other birds." Atemu walked to the bird. When he touched its left wing, it made a quiet sound. "I think its wing is hurt," said Atemu.

عندما وصل أتيمو إلى الفناء، دخل الطائر وراءه. قام أتيمو بمراقبته بينما كان يقوم بتنظيف بعض الخضراوات للعشاء. ثم رأى قط أخته نجم حيث كان يراقب الطائر أيضًا. فجأة قفز القط على الطائر لكن لم يطِر الطائر بعيدًا. جرت نجم وأمسكت بالقط وقالت «يجب عليك الإمساك بالفئران والثعابين ليس الطيور». قالت الأم: «ما مشكلة هذا الطائر؟ لا يستطيع أن يطير. هل هو مُصاب؟» قال أتيمو «ربما! لم يطِر مع باقي الطيور.» اقترب أتيمو من الطائر. عندما لمس جناحه الأيسر، أصدر صوتًا هادئًا. قال أتيمو « أعتقد أن جناحه مُصاب.»



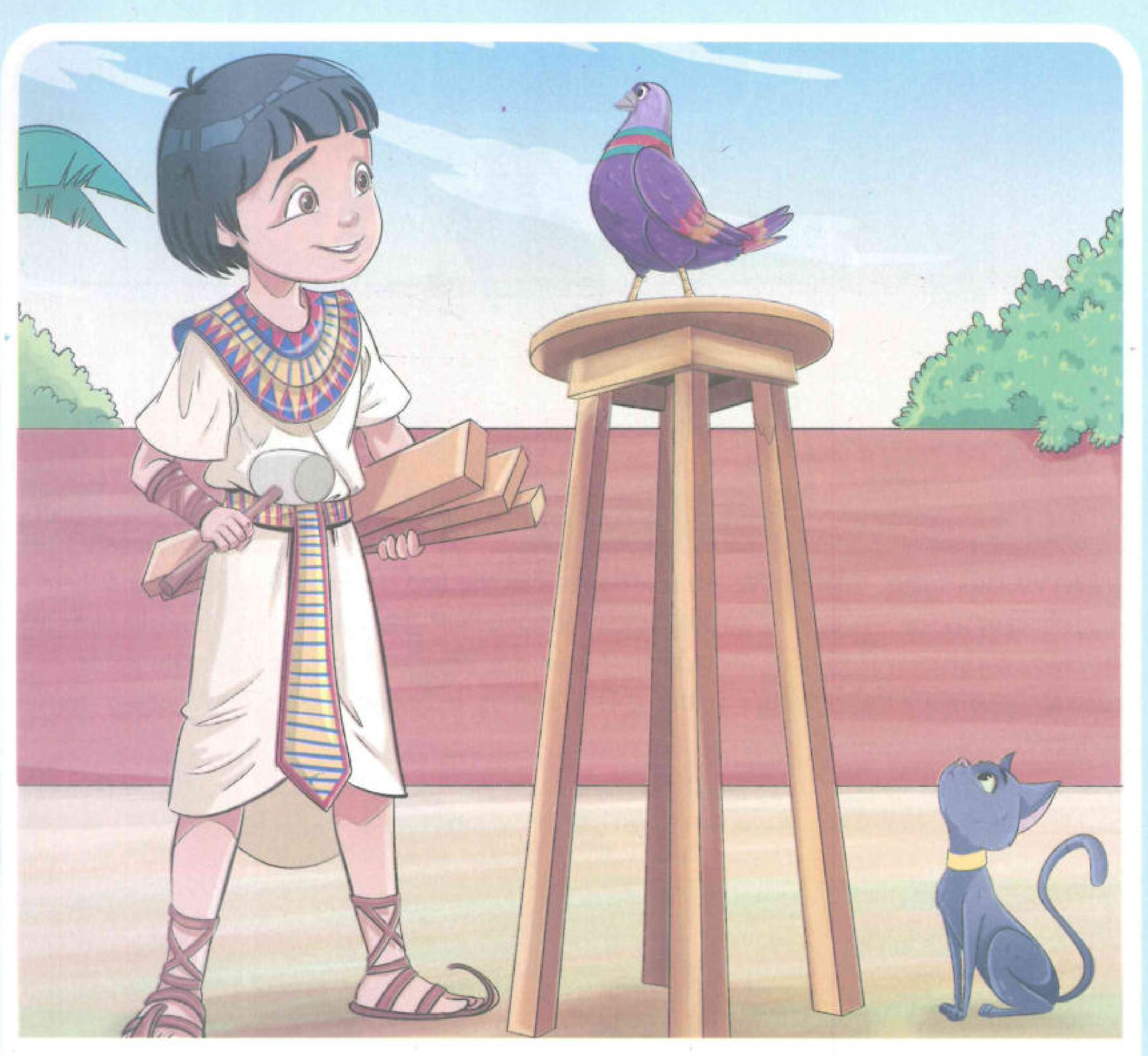
When Atemu's father came home, Atemu showed him the bird. "It has a hurt wing, and there is something on its leg." "Poor bird!" said his father. "What is that?" He took the object from the bird's leg. It was a very small wooden box. Atemu's father opened it. A piece of papyrus paper was inside.
"It's a message!" said Atemu's father. "This bird is a carrier pigeon." "What's a carrier pigeon?" asked Atemu.

عندما عاد والد أتيمو إلى المنزل ،عرض عليه أتيمو حالة الطائر قائلًا «لديه جناح مُصاب ويوجد شيء ما على ساقه». قال الأب: « ياله من طائر مسكين!» ثم قال «ما هذا؟» أخذ الشيء الموجود على ساق الطائر. كان صندوقًا خشبيًا صغيرًا جدًا . قام والد أتيمو بفتحه، كان يوجد ورقة بردى بالداخل. قال والد أتيمو «إنها رسالة ، هذا الطائر من الحمام الزاجل.» سأل أتيمو «ما هو الحمام الزاجل؟»



"It's a bird which carries messages," said his father. "Important people in the city keep pigeons. The pigeons learn where they live. Then people take the pigeons to new places. When there is news from that place, they attach the message to the pigeon. It flies home and carries the message. That's why they're called carrier pigeons."
"That's very clever!" said Atemu. "So, what does this message say?" "I don't know," said his father. "I'll take it to my friend, the scribe."

قال الأب «إنه طائر يحمل رسائل.» «الناس المهمون في المدينة يقومون بتربية الحمام. الحمام يعلم مكان معيشتهم ثم يأخذهم الناس إلى أماكن جديدة. عندما يكون هناك أخبار من تلك الأماكن، يقوم الناس بوضع رسالة ملحقة بساق الطائر لتطير عائدة إلى المكان حاملة معها الرسالة. لذلك يسمون بالحمام الزاجل». «قال أتيمو» «هذه طريقة ذكية جدًا.» ماذا تقول هذه الرسالة إذًا؟» قال الأب: «لا أعلم، سآخذها إلى صديقي الكاتب .»



Atemu looked after the pigeon. He made it a high table which the cat couldn't jump onto. He gave it water and grain and talked to it. The pigeon cooed back happily. Atemu's father went to the city. Three days later he came home.

"Did you speak to the scribe?" said Atemu.

"Yes," said his father. "The message was for a jewelry merchant in the city, Mr Akhon. I took him the message, and he was very happy! It was an order for a lot of gold jewelry from the capital city. It was very important for him." "Mr Akhon also wants his pigeon. We'll take it to him next week."

"Yes, father," Atemu said quietly. For the next week, Atemu looked after the pigeon. The pigeon started to fly again. Every morning, it flew to the roof where Atemu slept and cooed to him. Atemu was very happy to have a new pigeon friend. "I don't want you to go home," he said to it quietly.

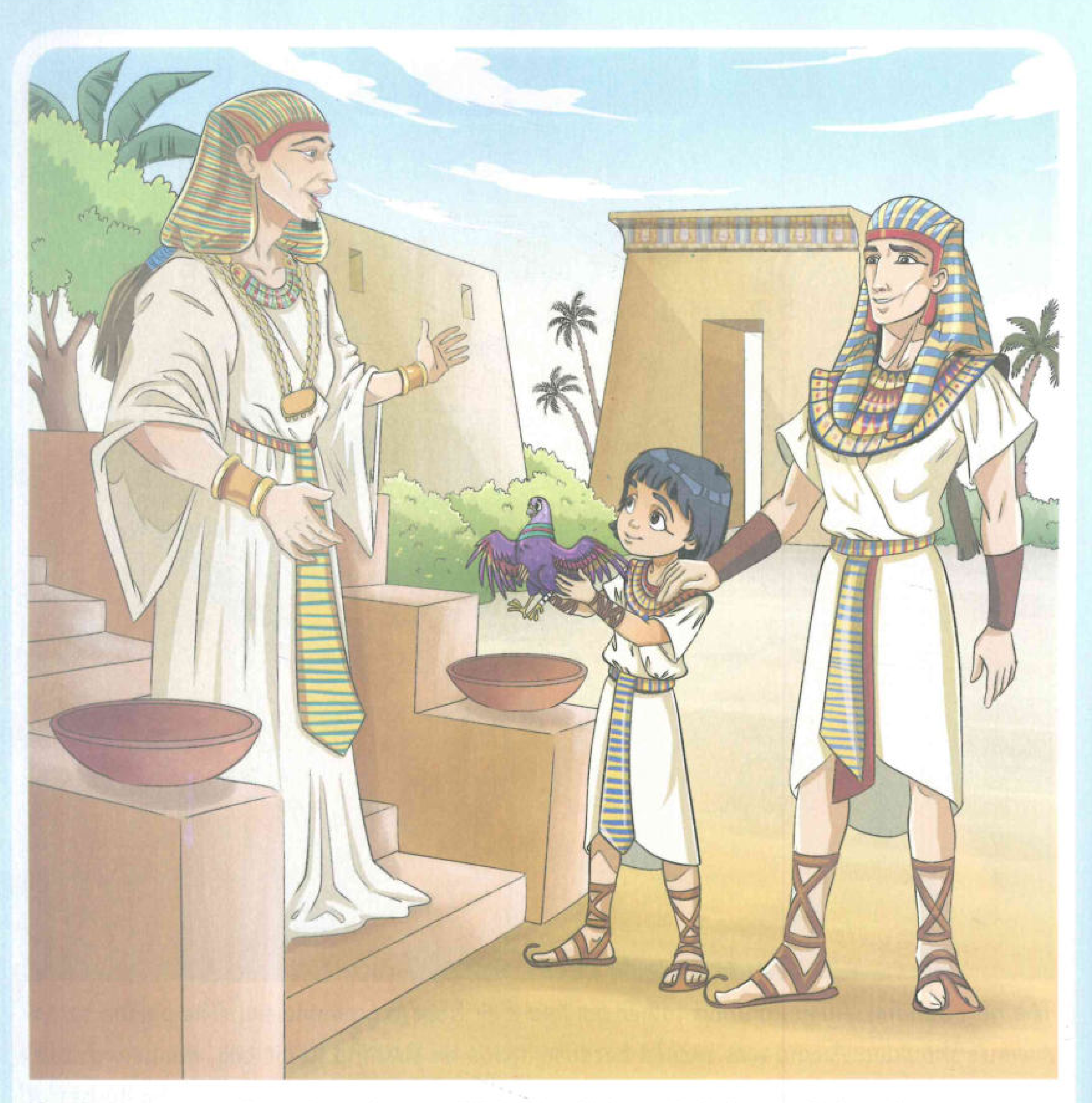
اعتنى أتيمو بالحمامة. صنع لها طاولة عالية بحيث لا يستطيع القط الوصول لها والقفز عليها. أعطاها المياه والحبوب وتكلم معها. وأصدرت الحمامة صوتًا يدل على الفرحة. ذهب والد أتيمو إلى المدينة وبعد ثلاثة أيام عاد إلى المنزل. قال أتيمو «هل تحدثت مع الكاتب؟» قال الأب «نعم ، الرسالة تخص تاجر مجوهرات يُدعى السيد آخون في المدينة. عندما أخذت له الرسالة كان سعيدًا للغاية. كانت رسالة طلب كمية كبيرة من مجوهرات الذهب من العاصمة. كانت مهمة جدًا له» .«يريد السيد آخون أيضًا حمامته. سنأخذها له الأسبوع القادم». قال أتيمو بهدوء: «حسنًا يا أبي». اعتنى أتيمو بالحمامة قبل تسليمها الأسبوع القادم. بدأت الحمامة تطير مجددًا . تطير كل صباح إلى السطح حيث ينام أتيمو وتظل تردد أصواتًا له. كان أتيمو سعيدًا للغاية لأنه أصبح لديه صديق جديد حمامة. قال لها بصوت منخفض «لا أريدك أن تذهبي إلى بيتك .»

The End



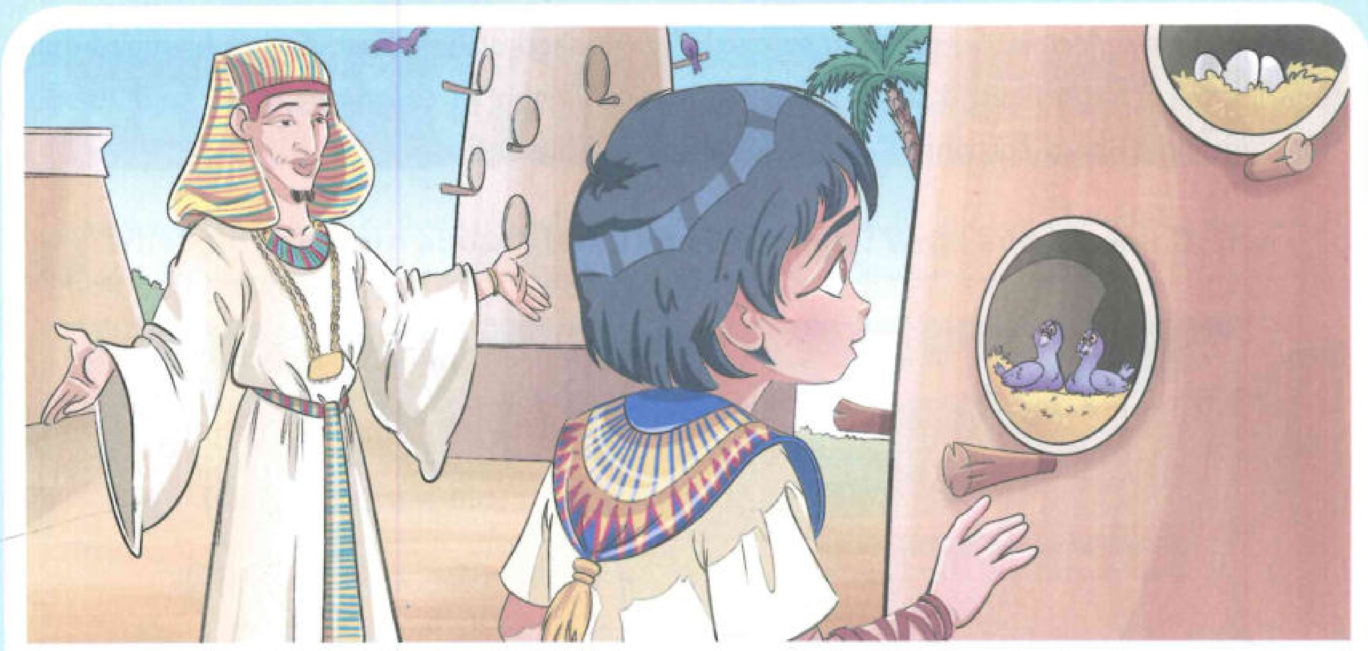
The next Sunday, Atemu and his father got into their boat to go to the city. The pigeon sat on Atemu's shoulder. Atemu was excited because it was his first trip to the city, but he was also sad. It was his last day with the pigeon. But he forgot about that when he saw the houses of the city. There were so many and some of the houses were very big! Some houses had white domes with many small holes in the yard or on the roof.
"What are they?" asked Atemu. "Those are dovecotes." said Atemu's father. "Dovecotes are special houses for pigeons."

الأحد التالى، أخذ أتيمو ووالده القارب ليذهبا إلى المدينة. جلست الحمامة على كتف أتيمو. كان أتيمو متحمسًا لأنها كانت رحلته الأولى إلى المدينة ولكنه كان أيضًا حزينًا لأنه آخر يوم سيقضيه مع الحمامة. لكنه نسى ذلك عندما رأى منازل المدينة. كان يوجد العديد منها وبعض منهم كان حجمه كبيرًا جدًّا. بعض المنازل لها قباب بيضاء ويوجد بها فتحات صغيرة. وكانت توجد فى الفناء أو على سطح المنزل. سأل أتيمو «ما هذه؟». قال والد أتيمو «إنها أبراج حمام.» «أبراج الحمام هى منازل خاصة للحمام.»



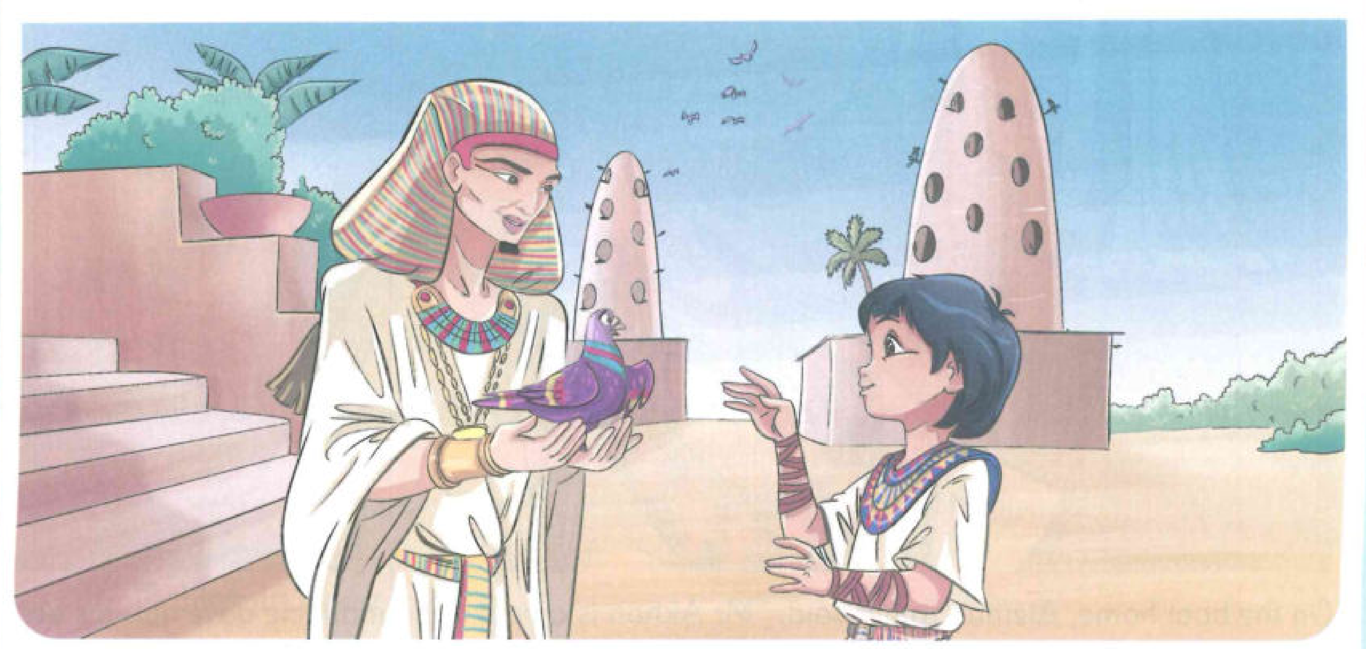
Finally, they arrived at a large house. "We're here!" Atemu's father said. A smiling man came to meet them. He was wearing a lot of jewelry. Atemu knew it was the merchant.
"Welcome to my home!" Mr Akhon said. "Thank you so much for finding my message. It was from my most important customer. And thanks for looking after my pigeon. Her name is Amethyst – because her feathers are the same color as these purple stones. She is my best bird!" "She was hurt," said Atemu. "I see," said the merchant. Can she fly now?"
"Yes," said Atemu. "She's much better." "Come with me then. I'll show you where she lives."

أخيرًا، وصلوا إلى منزل كبير . قال والد أتيمو «ها نحن قد وصلنا». جاء رجل مبتسم ليقابلنا. كان يرتدى الكثير من المجوهرات. عرف أتيمو أنه هو التاجر. قال السيد آخون «مرحبًا بكم فى منزلى». «شكرًا لكم لأنكم وجدتم رسالتى. كانت من أحد زبائنى المهمين وشكرًا لاعتنائكم بحمامتى. اسمها «أماثيست» لأن ريشها بنفس لون هذه الأحجار البنفسجية». إنه طائرى المفضل». قال أتيمو: «هى كانت مُصابة». قال التاجر: «أفهم ذلك. هل تستطيع أن تطير الآن؟» قال أتيمو: «نعم، إنها أحسن بكثير الآن». قال التاجر: «تعالوا معى إذًا. سأريكم أين تعيش هى».



Atemu and his father followed Mr Akhon into his yard. At one side, there were three tall dovecotes. "My birds will come home soon." the merchant said. "How many do you have?" said Atemu. "Oh, a lot." said Mr Akhon. "They have a lot of babies, so I don't know exactly." Atemu looked into a dovecote. He could see some baby birds. "They're so cute!" Atemu said. "It's time to go, son," said Atemu's father. "Say goodbye to the bird."

اتبع أتيمو ووالده السيد آخون إلى فناء منزله. على أحد الجوانب، كان يوجد ثلاثة أبراج حمام طويلة. قال التاجر «ستأتي طيوري إلى منازلهم قريبًا.» قال أتيمو «كم عدد الطيور التي تمتلكها؟» قال السيد آخون «أوووه. لدى الكثير» «لديهم العديد من الصغار، لذلك لا أعرف عددهم بالضبط.» نظر أتيمو داخل برج حمام. استطاع أن يرى بعضًا من صغار الطيور. قال أتيمو «إنهم لطفاء للغاية.» قال والد أتيمو «حان وقت الذهاب يا بني، ودع الطائر.»

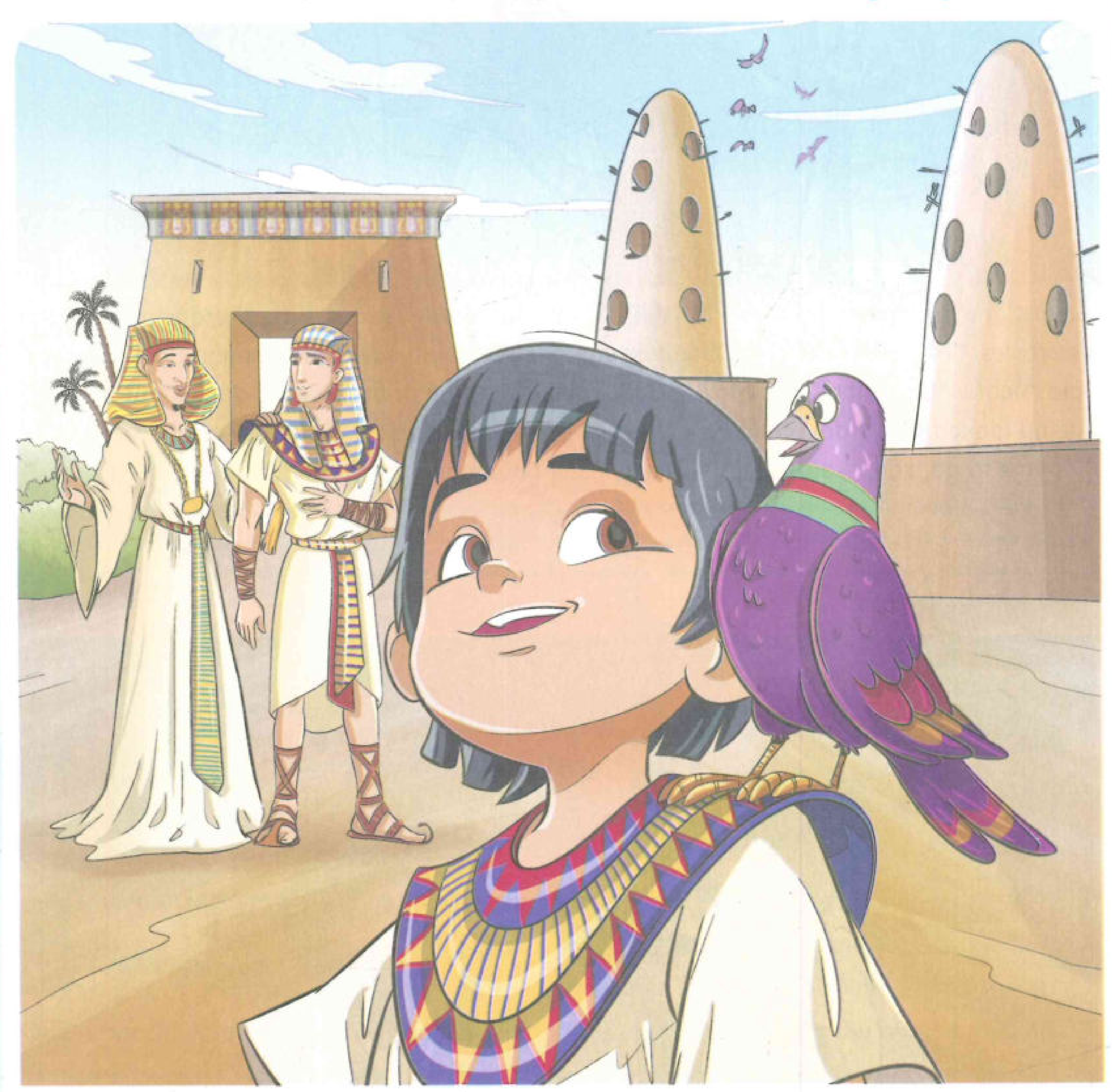


"Goodbye Amethyst," said Atemu, softly. He touched her purple feathers, and she cooed. He was very sad, but he tried to smile. The merchant was a kind man. He spoke to Atemu. "You say Amethyst got well again, but she didn't fly home." "Yes" said Atemu. "Well, I think she'll be happy to stay with you now."

قال أتيمو برقة: «وداعًا يا أماثيست.» «قام بلمس ريشها البنفسجي وقامت هي بإصدار صوت . كان أتيمو حزينًا ولكنه حاول أن يبتسم. كان التاجر رجلًا طيبًا. تحدث إلى أتيمو قائلًا : «أنت تقول إن أماثيست تحسنت ، ولكنها لم تعد إلى منزلها.» قال أتيمو «نعم.» رد التاجر « حسنًا، أعتقد أنها ستكون سعيدة بالبقاء معك الآن».

"Oh wow!" said Atemu. "Thank you so much." He looked at Amethyst, and she jumped onto his shoulder. "She'll need a small house," said Mr Akhon. "I can make one!" said Atemu. "I'm learning to be a carpenter." "I'll help you," said his dad.

قال أتيمو «أوووه وااو.» «شكرًا جزيلًا.» لقد نظر إلى أماثيست و قفزت هى على كتفه. قال السيد آخون «سوف تحتاج هى لمنزل صغير».
قال أتيمو: «أستطيع أن أصنع واحدًا» «فأنا أتعلم أن أكون نجارًا فى الوقت الحالى.» قال والده «سوف أساعدك.»



On the boat home, Atemu's father said. "Mr Akhon is a very good man. He gave you his best bird!" Atemu said. "Yes. How can I thank him?" "You could ask the scribe to write a thank you letter for you," said his father. "Good idea!" said Atemu!" "And Amethyst can take it to him!"

على متن القارب العائد للقرية، قال والد أتيمو «السيد آخون رجل صالح جدًا. لقد أعطاك طائره المفضل.» قال أتيمو «نعم، كيف يمكننى أن أشكره؟» قال الأب «يمكنك أن تطلب من الكاتب أن يكتب لك خطاب شكر من أجله.» قال أتيمو: «يالها من فكرة رائعة. ويستطيع أماثيست أن يأخذها إليه.»



Story
General Practice

1 **What did you learn about Atemu and his family? Write and answer T (True) or F (False):**

1. Atemu lives in a big town. ( )
2. Nedjem is Atemu's older sister. ( )
3. Atemu is ten years old. ( )
4. Atemu goes to school. ( )
5. Atemu's father makes things from wood. ( )
6. Atemu has a cat. ( )

2 **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. Atemu's father was a ....
   a) teacher b) carpenter c) engineer d) pilot
2. Atemu loved animals especially ....
   a) cows b) horses c) fish d) birds
3. Carrier pigeons carry ....
   a) bags b) toys c) messages d) books
4. The message was for a .... merchant in the city.
   a) jewelry b) food c) clothes d) boats

3 **Who says this in the story? Read and write the names:** SB

Atemu – Atemu's father – Atemu's mother – Nedjem

1. "I think its wing is hurt." ....
2. "You should catch rats and snakes, not birds!" ....
3. "It can't fly." ....
4. "That's very clever!" ....
5. "I'll take it to my friend, the scribe." ....

4 Complete the paragraph. Check your answers in the story:

SB

All of the birds were light gray, with green feathers on their ....(1)............ and ....(2)............ feathers on their chests. But one bird was a little different. It was ....(3)............ than the other birds. They had ....(4)............ beaks, but its beak was ....(5)............ . It also sounded different. The ....(6)............ the other birds made was a long "whoo", but it went "coo coo". It had ....(7)............ on its wings, but they didn't.

5 Read the text and answer the questions:

Atemu looked after the pigeon. He made it a high table which the cat couldn't jump onto. He gave it water and grain and talked to it. The pigeon cooed back happily. Atemu's father went to the city. Three days later he came home.

He knew that the message was for a jewelry merchant in the city, Mr Akhon. He took him the message, and he was very happy! It was an order for a lot of gold jewelry from the capital city. It was very important for him. Mr Akhon also wants his pigeon. They will take it to him next week."

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Atemu looked after the ....
   a) cat b) cow c) pigeon d) horse
2. The word "merchant" means ....
   a) teacher b) trader c) carpenter d) scribe
3. Atemu and his father will take the bird to the merchant next ....
   a) week b) year c) month d) season

B Answer the following questions:

4. What was the message about?

   ....

5. Summarize the text into two sentences.

   ....

6 Read and answer:

SB

1. What was the story mainly about?

   ....

2. Where did Atemu live?

   ....

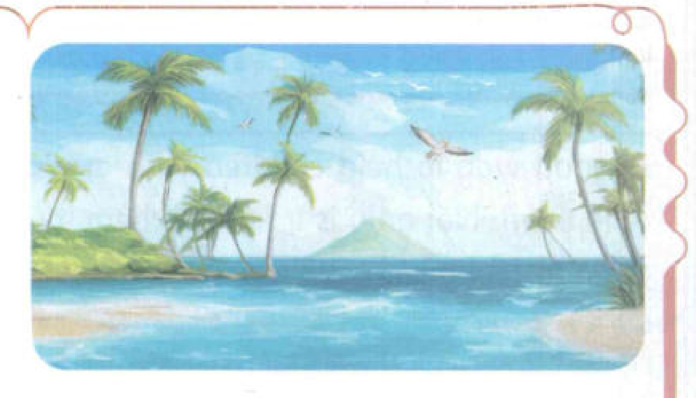




Review 4



Look and read: انظر واقرأ:



I love going on vacation, but I think eco-tourism is a more sustainable way to travel. We learned about it in geography today and our teacher explained it really well. For example, you mustn't litter on beaches because this can make animals sick. I love watching birds and other animals in their natural habitats. However, people mustn't get too close to the birds, because it can make them frightened. It's important to speak and move quietly when you are near wildlife.

I think people must be careful not to damage the environment when they travel.

أحب الذهاب فى إجازة ، لكننى أعتقد أن السياحة البيئية هى طريقة مستدامة أكثر للسفر للحفاظ على البيئة . لقد تعلمنا عنها فى الجغرافيا اليوم وشرحها معلمنا جيدًا. على سبيل المثال، يجب ألا نرمى القمامة على الشواطئ لأن هذا يمكن أن يجعل الحيوانات مريضة. أحب مشاهدة الطيور والحيوانات الأخرى فى مواطنها الطبيعية. ومع ذلك، يجب ألا يقترب الناس كثيرًا من الطيور، لأن ذلك قد يجعلهم خائفين. من المهم التحدث والتحرك بهدوء عندما تكون بالقرب من الحياة البرية.

أعتقد أن الناس يجب أن يكونوا حريصين على عدم الإضرار بالبيئة عند سفرهم.

Extra vocabulary

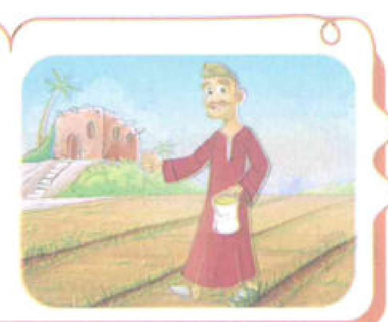
going on	الذهاب فى	vacation	إجازة
eco-tourism	السياحة البيئية	sustainable (adj.)	مستدام
geography	الجغرافيا	explain (v.)	يشرح
litter	قمامة	beaches	الشواطئ
sick (adj.)	مريض	natural (adj.)	طبيعى
habitats	بيئات طبيعية	get close to	يقترب من
move quietly	يتحرك بهدوء	wildlife	الحياة البرية
careful (adj.)	حذر	damage (v.)	يدمر
environment	البيئة	travel (v.)	يسافر



Look and read: انظر واقرأ:

This is our community garden, where we plant seeds to grow fruit and vegetables. The fruit and vegetables are then shared with people in the local area who can't buy or grow their own.

هذه هى حديقة مجتمعنا، حيث نزرع البذور لزراعة الفاكهة والخضراوات. ثم نتشارك الفواكه والخضراوات مع الناس فى المنطقة المحلية الذين لا يستطيعون الشراء أو الزراعة بأنفسهم.



A good way to help children who are in hospitals is to read with them. Not only is it fun for them, but it can actually help them to feel better.

توجد طريقة جيدة لمساعدة الأطفال الموجودين فى المستشفيات وهى القراءة معهم. ليس الأمر ممتعًا بالنسبة لهم فحسب، بل يمكن أن يساعدهم فى الواقع على الشعور بالتحسن.



Last year, we started a "plant a tree" project for our local park. Every new tree has sponsors. The sponsors are people who pay some money to help look after the tree. The more sponsors we have, the more trees we can plant. This year, we can buy lots of trees because we did so well last year!

فى العام الماضى، بدأنا مشروع «زرع شجرة» لحديقتنا المحلية. كل شجرة جديدة لها رعاة. الرعاة هم الأشخاص الذين يدفعون بعض المال للمساعدة فى رعاية الشجرة. كلما زاد عدد الرعاة لدينا، زاد عدد الأشجار التى يمكننا زراعتها. هذا العام، يمكننا شراء الكثير من الأشجار لأننا قمنا بعمل جيد فى العام الماضى!



When you volunteer at a food bank, you can sort or make food for people who don't have enough to eat. It's a great way to help others, and volunteering for a charity like this can be good for your well-being, too.

عندما تتطوع فى بنك الطعام، يمكنك فرز أو صنع الطعام للأشخاص الذين ليس لديهم ما يكفى من الطعام. إنها طريقة رائعة لمساعدة الآخرين، والتطوع فى مؤسسة خيرية مثل هذه يمكن أن يكون مفيدًا لسلامتك أيضًا.



Extra vocabulary

community garden	حديقة مجتمعية	seeds	بذور	local area	منطقة محلية
hospitals	مستشفيات	actually	فى الواقع	feel better	يشعر بتحسن
project	مشروع	sponsors	رعاة	pay money	يدفع النقود
do well	يقوم بعمل جيد	volunteer	يتطوع	food bank	بنك الطعام
sort	يفرز	charity	جمعية خيرية	well-being	سلامة (صحة نفسية)

TAPE SCRIPTS



UNIT 7

Practice on Lesson 1

We have many artifacts in Egypt, because of the climate. We have a hot, dry climate here in Egypt, so artifacts aren't damaged by cold and wet weather. The Ancient Egyptians used certain materials that could last a long time. They used granite to build the pyramids. They also used gold a lot because it's valuable. But it was also durable.

Practice on Lesson 3

One night, the king was walking in his garden when he tripped over something on the ground. It was a strange-looking goat. It looked very sick. King Midas was a kind man, so he took the goat into his castle and helped it until it felt better. To thank the king, the goat made his wish come true. Everything the king touched turned into gold.

Test Yourself on Unit 7

Talia and Tarek were at the Museum of Ancient History last week. Dr Fayez was their tour guide. He told them that we have many artifacts in Egypt that are made of different materials. The pyramids for example, were built with granite. Pots in Ancient tombs were made of clay that ancient Egyptians found by the river. Other artifacts were made of glass that can last forever.

UNIT 8

Practice on Lesson 1

Yaseen had many wonderful toys when he was younger. He loved playing marbles with his brother Sami. He had a small skateboard, that he thought it was really good fun. Yaseen's favorite toy was his action figure. It looked like spider-man. He loved making up lots of games for it. Yaseen and Sami played board games very often, but Sami usually beat Yaseen.

Practice on Lesson 3

Last week Omar was doing a class quiz about the most popular free-time games his classmates prefer to play. Nader really loved playing outside. He liked running, climbing, and playing football. Reda really enjoyed playing party games like hopscotch and hide and seek. Sama thought playing outside is quite good, but she preferred playing games that use a lot of imagination like playing with her doll's house.

Test Yourself on Unit 8

Fares and Dalia are brother and sister. Last week, they visited their grandma in Luxor. Fares found his old toy box at her house. He was so excited to see all his old toys. Fares loved playing with his old action figures, too! He made up lots of games for them. His sister Dalia had a doll's house. They both played with it.

UNIT 9

Practice on Lesson 1

Lama is writing a review of a story. The story is about a man who goes to the market with his son and a donkey. The narrator is Goha. The setting is the countryside, many years ago. The characters are the man and his son. The moral is that you can't make people happy.

Practice on Lesson 3

My name is Nada. I love reading. Yesterday, I read a story about a boy called Sami. He worked as a shepherd, looking after sheep. Every day, he took the sheep up the hill and rested while the sheep ate the delicious grass. All the villagers were loving him, as he always tells the truth.

Test Yourself on Unit 9

My favorite story is "Goha and the Donkey". The characters are Goha, his son, and the donkey. It took place in the countryside. The story is about the man and his son who take turns riding the donkey. But people weren't happy with anyone riding the donkey. In the ending, they both carry the donkey!

March Monthly Test

Jane's grandparents lived by the sea. The beach near their house was quiet and beautiful. They loved to go there from time to time to swim and play games on the sand. One day, when Jane was visiting her grandparents, she suggested going to the beach. On the beach, when Jane was swimming, she found a bottle in the water with a message inside it.

UNIT 10

Practice on Lesson 1

I'm Salma, I read a book about proverbs, and it was amazing. Proverbs have more than one meaning, for example this proverb "The early bird catches the worm." tells us that a bird that is early, or the first to try to catch a worm, usually catches it. So, it also means that to be successful, you need to be the first to do something.

Practice on Lesson 3

Many birds migrate to and from Egypt, and across it, because of where it is in the world. North Africa is hotter than Europe, so in winter, many birds leave northern European countries and fly to Egypt and other warmer places. This means that lots of interesting birds migrate to Egypt, such as eagles, falcons, and swifts.

Practice on Lessons 4 & 5

The Ras Mohammed National Park on the Red Sea is a fantastic area for locals and tourists to visit. This beautiful area on the Sinai Peninsula is famous for its sea life, warm water, and amazing weather. People come from all over the world to snorkel and scuba dive here. You can see coral reefs and lots of brightly colored fish, and maybe sharks.

Test Yourself on Unit 10

Hi, I'm Salma. Next month, we're going on a tour to see the birds and animals which live near the water. We'll travel along the river in small boats, and camp in tents at night. We'll bring our cameras, because we'll see some amazing things. We hope to see lizards and turtles, as well as lots of interesting plants.

UNIT 11

Practice on Lesson 1

My name is Youssef. I'm in grade six. We started a project at school called Community Help. We started a vegetable garden. There were lots of people from the community who volunteered to help us in the garden. We grow potatoes, tomatoes, carrots, and peppers. We also grow strawberries, oranges, and apples.

Practice on Lesson 2

I always like to volunteer. I volunteer at a day center for old people. I show them how to open jars with a multi-grip. I do a beach clean-up too. I pick up the trash with a grabber and put the trash in black bags. It's very easy to use.

Test Yourself on Unit 11

Omar volunteers to help clean trash from the river, so that animals' habitats are safer. Lara helps out in the kindergarten class. She reads stories to the younger children. Ali and his parents donate lots of toys and paintings to the children's hospital. Youssef and his friends started a vegetable garden in their school. They grow fresh vegetables.

April Monthly Test

Fareeda Hasssan was born in Alexandria in 1994. She started preparatory school in 2006. In 2010, She organized her First charity event delivering food boxes to the community. In 2020, She won the "2020 community worker award" Today, She runs a charity for childern.







Final Revision and Exams

100% إجابات

نزل إجابات الكتاب بصيغة PDF





www.aladwaa.com Follow Us








Contents





Unit 7 Amazing artifacts

Vocabulary

Museum of Ancient History	متحف التاريخ القديم	artifacts	آثار / تحف فنية
preserve (v.)	يحفظ	materials	مواد
granite	جرانيت	durable	متين/ صلب
fascinating	جذاب	glass	زجاج
clay	طين/ صلصال	valuable	قيم
gold	ذهب	pots	أواني (حلل)
good condition	حاله جيدة	grains	حبوب
adore (v.)	يعشق/ يحب بشدة	mummify (v.)	يحنط
statue	تمثال	wisdom	الحكمة
hippo	فرس النهر	copper	نحاس
falcon	صقر	crocodile	تمساح
economy	اقتصاد	baboon	قرد الرياح (البابون)
ibis	طائر أبو منجل	weapons	أسلحة
king	ملك	metal	معدن
trade (v.)	يتاجر	tools	أدوات
iron	حديد	castle	قلعة
daughter	ابنة	save (v.)	يوفر
heaven	الجنة	dagger	خنجر
bronze	معدن البرونز	craftsmen	الحرفيون
stone	حجر	fortune	ثروة
meteorite	نيزك	agricultural	زراعية
damage (v.)	يدمر	pharaohs	الفراعنة
precious	غالٍ / ثمين	jewelry	مجوهرات





Language Focus

The Past Simple Tense

We use the past simple tense to express an action that happened and ended in the past at a certain time.

يستخدم زمن الماضي البسيط للتعبير عن فعل حدث وانتهى فى الماضى فى وقت معين.

يتكون الفعل فى الماضى بإضافه (ed /d/ied):

1. Regular Verbs
أفعال منتظمة

معظم الأفعال يضاف لها (ed):	الأفعال المنتهية بـ (e) يضاف لها (d):	الأفعال المنتهية بـ (y) قبلها حرف ساكن نحذف الـ (y) ويضاف إليها الـ (ied).	الأفعال المنتهية بحرف مسبوق بـ (a - e - i - o - u) + حرف ساكن يضاف لها (ed) مع مضاعفة الحرف الساكن.
talk → talked	adore → adored	mummify → mummified	drop → dropped

e.g. Ancient Egyptians loved animals.

2. Irregular Verbs
أفعال غير منتظمة

الأفعال غير المنتظمة لا تتبع قاعدة عند تحويلها للماضى البسيط وتحفظ كما هى، على سبيل المثال:

Present	Past	Present	Past
be (am - is - are)	was / were	keep	kept
come	came	teach	taught
become	became	grow	grew
go	went	have	had
do	did		

e.g. Ancient Egyptians kept monkeys and baboons.

Affirmative Form: صيغه الإثبات:

Subject (الفاعل) + التصريف الثانى للفعل + تكملة الجملة.

e.g. Sama traveled to London last year.

Negative Form: صيغه النفى:

فى حالة النفى نستخدم:

Subject (الفاعل) + didn't + (inf.) الفعل فى المصدر + تكملة الجملة.

e.g. People in the past didn't have cars.

e.g. I didn't go to the beach last summer.



Yes/No question: السؤال بـ (هل)

فى حالة السؤال بـ «هل» فى الماضى، نستخدم:

Question السؤال

A: Did + subject (الفاعل) + (inf.) الفعل فى المصدر + تكملة السؤال ?

e.g. A: Did Laila play basketball?

للإجابة نستخدم:

Answer الإجابة

B: Yes, / B: No,	subject (الفاعل)	did. / didn't.

e.g. B: Yes, she did. or No, she didn't.

e.g. A: Did you do your homework? Or B: Yes, I did. / B: No, I didn't.

Wh- question: السؤال باستخدام كلمة الاستفهام

A: Question word (كلمة الاستفهام)	+ did	+ subject (الفاعل)	(inf.) الفعل فى المصدر...?

B: Subject + التصريف الثانى للفعل + تكملة الجملة.

e.g. A: Where did you go yesterday? B: I went to the club.

e.g. A: What did Talia do last night?
B: She watched TV, then she went to bed.

Key words: الكلمات الدالة

yesterday	last	ago	in the past
أمس	الماضى	منذ	فى الماضى

e.g. Hana went to the zoo yesterday.

e.g. I visited my grandparents last week.

e.g. Hossam and Ali met each other an hour ago.

e.g. We lived in a village in the past.



Verb to "be" in the past simple

Affirmative Form: الصيغة المثبتة:

I/ He/ She/ It/ فاعل مفرد	was + تكملة الجملة.

We/ They/ You/ فاعل جمع	were + تكملة الجملة.

- Habiba was abroad last week.
- Cats were important pets in Ancient Egypt.

Negative Form: الصيغة المنفية:

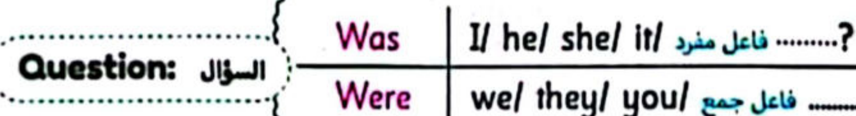
I/ He She/ It/ فاعل مفرد	was not (wasn't) + تكملة الجملة.

We/ They You/ فاعل جمع	were not (weren't) + تكملة الجملة.

- There wasn't a statue in the temple.
- They weren't at school yesterday.

Yes/No question: السؤال باستخدام "هل":

Question: السؤال



Was	I/ he/ she/ it/ فاعل مفرد ....?
Were	we/ they/ you/ فاعل جمع ....?

Answer: الإجابة

Yes,	subject (الفاعل)	was/were.
No,		wasn't/weren't.

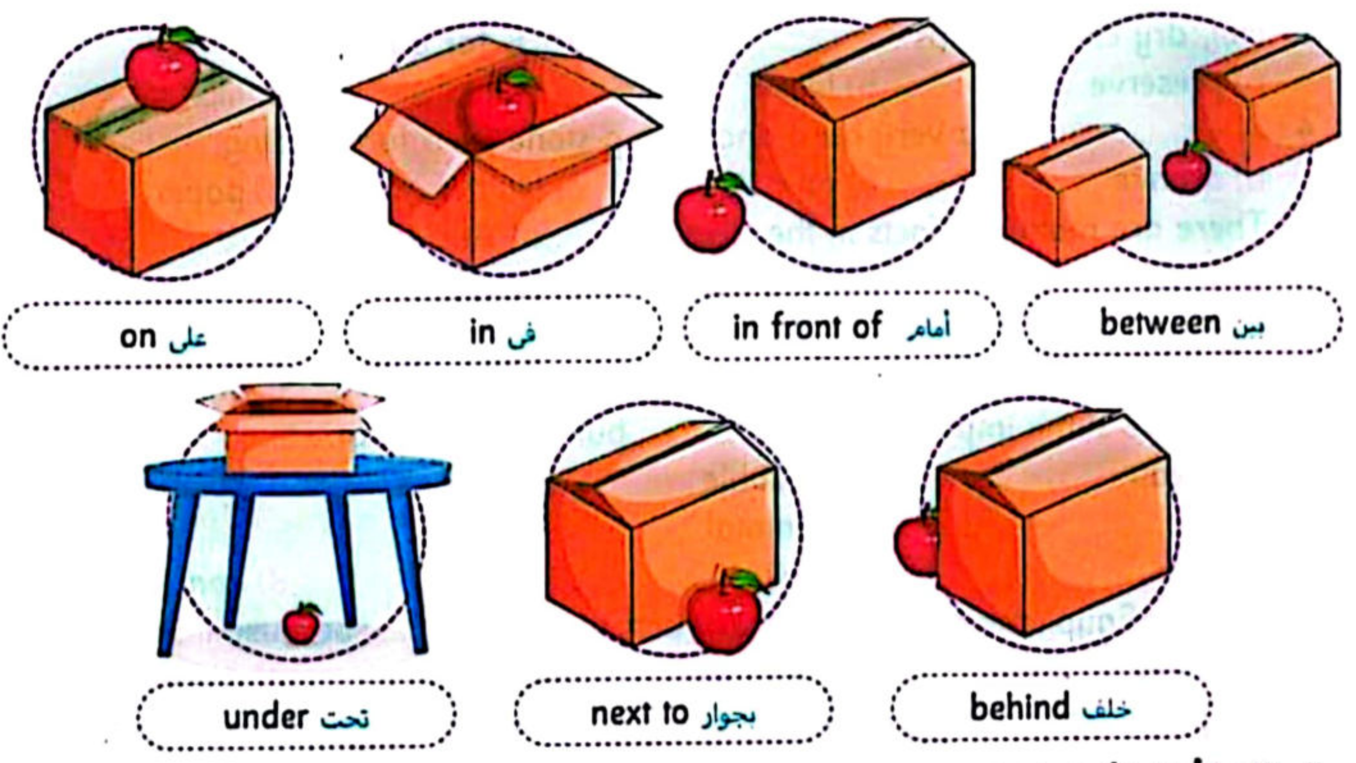
Karma: Was Hossam at the museum yesterday?	Amal : No, he wasn't.
Ali : Were there a lot of artifacts in the museum?	Omar : Yes, there were.



Prepositions of place

We use prepositions of place to say where things are.

نستخدم حروف الجر الخاصة بالمكان لنذكر أماكن تواجد الأشياء.



- للسؤال عن أماكن الأشياء، نستخدم:

Where is the + اسم الشيء ?
It's + اسم شيء آخر + حرف الجر الخاص بالمكان.





e.g. A: Where is the ball?
B: It's under the table.

e.g. A: Where is the mouse?
B: It's next to the TV.

Exercises on Unit 7

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 When we were at the museum, the .... talked about the ancient history.
a) farmer b) doctor c) plumber d) guide

2 Ancient Egyptians made the Pyramids from .... SB
a) clay b) granite c) gold d) silver

3 Hot, dry climate helps .... the artifacts for a long time.
a) preserve b) learn c) build d) like

4 A .... is a very hard and strong stone used for building.
a) granite b) oil c) leather d) paper

5 There are many artifacts in the .... of Ancient History.
a) stone b) Pyramid c) School d) Museum

6 Ancient Egyptians used .... to make some pots.
a) fire b) light c) clay d) carpet

7 We have some important, ... buildings in Egypt.
a) cheap b) valuable c) bad d) easy

8 The .... is a scary animal.
a) cat b) snake c) duck d) camel

9 Ancient Egyptians covered their artifacts in .... because it is valuable.
a) wood b) gold c) plastic d) wool

10 People in Ancient Egypt wore .... with the image of a scarab to bring them good fortune.
a) shoes b) glasses c) jewelry d) pants

11 The verb ".............................." means to warp in cloth to preserve for a very long time.
a) wear b) buy c) mummify d) damage

12 A .... is an object made of stone or another material to look like a person or animal.
a) wisdom b) grain c) pet d) statue

13 The Ancient Egyptians used metals to make tools and ....
a) weapons b) foods c) cloth d) drinks

14 A .... is the system of how a country's money and goods are produced and used.
a) metal b) trade c) economy d) weapon

15 Ancient Egyptians .... made a famous dagger for Tutankhamun's tomb from meteorite.
a) craftsmen b) farmers c) plumbers d) carpenters

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

A

gold – strange – daughter – castle – son

There was a king called King Midas. He loved three things more than anything else. His ....(1)..............., Marigold, his rose garden and ....(2)............... . One night, he tripped over something on the ground. It was a ....(3)............... looking goat. It was very sick, so King Midas took it into his ....(4)............... and gave it food. In the morning, the goat felt much better and thanked the king for his help.

B

common – craftsmen – copper – meteorites – garden

The Ancient Egyptians were really great people. They started using iron many years ago. Before iron, they worked with ....(1)............... and bronze. Some of their early iron was from ....(2)............... . Ancient Egyptians ....(3)............... made a famous dagger for Tutankhamun's tomb from a meteorite. For them, iron was more precious than gold. The Ancient Egyptians used iron for small items, like jewelry. Copper and bronze were ....(4)............... metals for tools.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 I .... to the beach yesterday.
a) go b) went c) going d) goes

2 They .... excited to see their grandfather last night.
a) are b) is c) am d) were

3 The building is .... the bank and the restaurant.
a) in b) under c) in front d) between

4 I .... science when I was at the university.
a) study b) studied c) studies d) studying

5 Did the Ancient Egyptians .... cats?
a) keep b) keeping c) kept d) keeps

6 Amr didn't .... up in Cairo.
a) grew b) growing c) grow d) grows

7 Where .... you go yesterday?
a) do b) did c) does d) doing





8 There .... a lot of people in the party.

a) is b) am c) was d) were

9 I put my mobile .... the table.

a) in b) next c) between d) on

10 There is a book .... the boxes.

a) in front b) between c) next d) across

4 Read and write the correct form of the (word)s between brackets:

1 Nour (don't) .... come from France yesterday.

2 My father (come) .... home two hours ago.

3 (Do) .... she swim in the sea last summer?

4 (Are) .... the boys sad when they lost the game?

5 She (doesn't) .... do her homework yesterday.

6 They didn't (bought) .... a present last birthday.

7 The ball was in front (to) .... the house.

8 The library is (behind) .... to the computer room.

9 We (eat) .... at this restaurant a week ago.

10 A: (Was) .... there books on the table? B: Yes, there were.

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1 used – small – iron – for – They – items.

....

2 We – excited – learn – are – to– about – history.

....

3 do – many – Why – we – artifacts – have?

....

4 Egyptians – Ancient – pets – The – loved – their.

....

5 a – weekend – Did – have – they – good?

....



Unit 8 Toys and games

Vocabulary

action figure	مجسم على شكل شخصية	make up (v.)	يؤلف / يخترع
train set	لعبة القطار	doll's house	منزل دمية
rollerblades	عجلات تزلج	have a go on ...	يجرب
skateboard	لوح التزلج	board games	ألعاب لوحية
beat (v.)	يهزم	marbles	كرات الرخام
cuddly toy	دمية عناق	hide and seek	الغميضة
hopscotch	لعبة المربعات	skipping	نط الحبل
chalk	طباشير	stall	كشك
toys	ألعاب	helmet	خوذة
knee pads	واق الركبة	video games	ألعاب الفيديو
button	زر	trunk	خرطوم الفيل
sail (v.)	يبحر	console	لوحة التحكم
city	مدينة	bricks	طوب (مكعبات البناء)
adventure games	ألعاب مغامرة	important	هام
creative	مبدع	fun	ممتع/ شيق
different	مختلف	idea	فكرة
difficult	صعب	project	مشروع
design	تصميم	favorite	مفضل
interesting	ممتع	younger	أصغر





Language Focus

Intensifiers

We use intensifiers to give a stronger meaning to adjectives and verbs.

نستخدم «معززات الصفات والأفعال» لإعطاء درجة من القوة للصفة والفعل.

really, so, very: حقًا / جدًا:

They're used to give a stronger meaning to the adjective or the verb.

نستخدم لجعل الصفة أو الفعل أقوى.

لاحظ أن "so/very" تأتي قبل الصفات ولكن "really" تأتي قبل الصفات أو الأفعال.

intensifier معزز | adjective صفة

really حقًا → e.g. I was really good at hiding!

intensifier معزز | verb فعل

really + verb فعل → e.g. I really liked playing hopscotch.

intensifier معزز | adjective صفة

very جدًا → e.g. Sarah wasn't very good at skipping.

intensifier معزز | adjective صفة

so جدًا → e.g. Some skipping games are so difficult.

quite: إلى حد ما:

It's used to make the adjective less strong. (It comes before the adjective).

يستخدم لجعل الصفة أقل قوة (وتأتي قبل الصفة).

intensifier معزز | adjective صفة

quite إلى حد ما → e.g. I thought hopscotch was quite good, but I preferred skipping.

at all: على الإطلاق:

It's used to strengthen the negative sentences.

يستخدم لجعل الجملة المنفية أقوى.

verb فعل | intensifier معزز

at all على الإطلاق → e.g. He didn't like skipping at all.

"Gerund"
Verbs followed by (verb + ing) أفعال متبوعة (بفعل + ing)

start → e.g. Hana started reading stories a year ago.

continue → e.g. Moaz continued skipping for a while.

finish → e.g. They finished painting their room yesterday.

stop → e.g. I stopped playing with my train set a few years ago.

like → e.g. They like playing with a train set.

love → e.g. Nour loves making up new games.

enjoy → e.g. I enjoy watching TV at night.

prefer → e.g. I prefer drinking coffee to tea.

dislike → e.g. We dislike playing with old toys.

hate → e.g. Nader and Omar hate playing hide and seek.

imagine → e.g. They imagined flying a plane.

Exercises on Unit 8

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 Spiderman was my favorite ....
a) food b) action figure c) place d) color

2 Playing .... like chess is really fun.
a) board games b) matches c) trains d) hide and seek

3 He marked the floor with chalk to play ....
a) hide and seek b) skipping c) hopscotch d) basket ball

4 My brother played with a .... it was his favorite toy.
a) chair b) book c) train set d) glass

5 I am good at playing marbles. I always .... my friends.
a) miss b) beat c) have d) look

6 To "................................" is to try something.
a) hide b) beat c) have a go on d) tidy up

7 You can wear .... to protect your knee while skateboarding.
a) a helmet b) a T-shirt c) knee pads d) rollerblades

8 The .... is the long nose of the elephant.
a) market b) trunk c) sail d) stall

9 I liked to play .... Nobody can find me.
a) handball b) tennis c) hopscotch d) hide and seek

10 A "................................" is what you touch to make a machine work.
a) sail b) button c) stall d) trunk

11 A "................................" is a strong piece of cloth that makes a boat move.
a) game b) train c) sail d) toy

12 A "................................" is a large table that you use to sell things from the market.
a) stall b) ship c) button d) brick

13 The rules of the .... are simple. We can play it easily.
a) bottle b) game c) garden d) helmet

14 She is very .... She always comes up with new ideas.
a) terrible b) bored c) creative d) bad

15 The test was so .... All students couldn't get the full mark.
a) easy b) difficult c) cheap d) simple

2 Read and complete the text with words in the box:

A creative – bad – cities – board – bricks

We always enjoy playing games outside with our friends, and at school we play hopscotch and .... (1) .... games. For me, playing video games is really exciting. It is fun. My favorite games are ones where you build .... (2) .... I've made a really big city using different .... (3) .... It has animals and plants in it, too. I like these games because you can be .... (4) .... and make something new.

B doll's house – make – have a go – action figure – rollerblades

I visited my grandfather last week. I found a box of my old toys at his house. There was an .... (1) .... I loved playing with it. My sister had a big .... (2) .... It looked like a real house. We both played with it. I found my old .... (3) .... I wanted to .... (4) .... on them, but they were too small. When I was younger, my friends had rollerblades, too.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 I .... liked playing tennis when I was young.
a) really b) much c) enough d) very

2 We didn't enjoy the match .... It was boring.
a) really b) very c) so d) at all

3 They are .... good at hiding. No one can find them.
a) few b) very c) at all d) quite

4 The film wasn't .... funny.
a) very b) really c) at all d) so

5 I am .... tired after playing football for two hours.
a) so b) at all c) few d) some

6 My sister stopped .... to her friend.
a) talking b) talks c) talked d) talk

7 I like .... English movies.
a) watch b) watching c) watched d) watches

8 She prefers .... hide and seek to hopscotch.
a) plays b) played c) playing d) play

9 Eman imagined .... to Italy.
a) travel b) travels c) traveled d) traveling

10 I enjoyed .... science when I was young.
a) studying b) study c) studies d) studied

4 Read and write the correct form of the (word)s between brackets:

1 Some math problems are (at all) .... difficult.

2 We (very) .... enjoyed our trip last holiday.

3 My brother speaks English (quite) .... well. He speaks like Americans.

4 The pizza was (at all) .... delicious. I couldn't stop eating.

5 The weather isn't (so) .... hot so we can go out.

6 My brother stopped (let) .... me share his toy.

7 They enjoy (eat) .... their lunch together.

8 She prefers (draws) .... pictures.

9 Sara finished (bake) .... her birthday cake.

10 She loves (plays) .... board games.

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1 friends – I – with – play – outside – games – my.

....

2 you – weekend – on the – grandma – visit – Did – your?

....

3 could – a very – time – hide – I – time – long – for.

....

4 Eslam – quite – football – was – good – at.

....

5 enjoyed – her – really – riding – She – bike.

....



Unit 9 What's the story?

Vocabulary

setting	المكان (للقصة)	characters	شخصيات
ending	النهاية	narrator	الراوى
moral	العبرة (الدرس الأخلاق)	funny	مضحك
countryside	الريف	journey	رحلة
story	قصة	sand	رمال
bottle	زجاجة	trash	قمامة
message	رسالة	shepherd	الراعى
shine (v.)	يلمع	scared	خائف
sheep	خروف	boat	قارب
villager	قروى	wolf	ذئب
coast	ساحل	market	سوق
forest	غابة	review	مراجعة
quiet	هادئ	son	ابن
take turn	يأخذ منحى	tired	مجهد/ مُتعب
space	الفضاء	path	ممر
popular	مشهور	differences	اختلافات
details	تفاصيل	have a turn	لديه دور
last part of	الجزء الأخير من	take place	يحدث
surf	يركب الأمواج		





Language Focus

The Past Continuous Tense

We use the past continuous tense in stories to say what was happening at a particular time in the past. نستخدم الماضى المستمر فى القصص لنقول ما كان يحدث فى وقت معين فى الماضى.

Affirmative Form: الجملة المثبتة

I/ He/ She/ It/ اسم مفرد	was	+ (inf. مصدر الفعل + ing) ... .
You/ We/ They/ اسم جمع	were	



1 Yesterday afternoon, John was walking his dog.
2 Ola and I were playing computer games yesterday morning.

Negative Form: الجملة المنفية

I/ He/ She/ It/ اسم مفرد	wasn't	+ (inf. مصدر الفعل + ing) ... .
You/ We/ They/ اسم جمع	weren't	



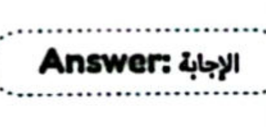
1 Amira wasn't reading yesterday evening.
2 They weren't sleeping at 8 yesterday.

Yes/No Question: السؤال بـ هل:

Question: السؤال

Was	I/ he/ she/ it/ اسم مفرد	(inf. مصدر الفعل + ing) ... ?
Were	we/ they/ you/ اسم جمع	

e.g. Was Ali studying for his exams last night?



Answer: الإجابة

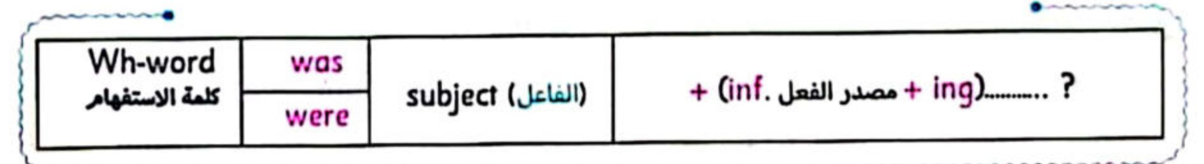
Yes,	subject (الفاعل)	was/were.
No,		wasn't/weren't.

e.g. Yes, he was. OR No, he wasn't.



1 A: Was she writing in her book?
B: Yes, she was.
2 A: Were the children playing football yesterday evening?
B: No, they weren't.

Wh- question: السؤال باستخدام أدوات الاستفهام



Wh-word كلمة الاستفهام	was / were	subject (الفاعل)	+ (inf. مصدر الفعل + ing)......... ?



1 A: What was she doing at 6 am yesterday?
B: She was having breakfast.

2 A: What were you doing yesterday evening?
B: I was studying.

Key words: الكلمات الدالة

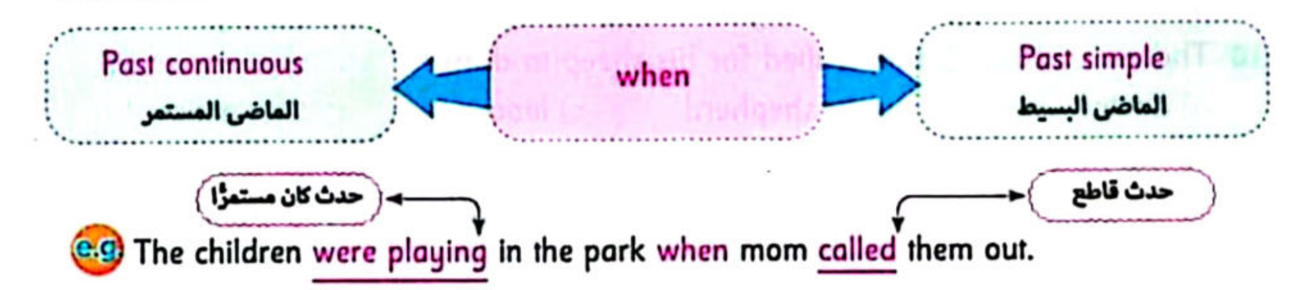
1 all (day/ morning/ evening/ night) yesterday

2 at (6, 7, 8, ... o'clock/ am/ pm) yesterday

Past continuous with (when):

We can also use the past continuous with (when) and the past simple to show when one action interrupted another in the past.

يمكننا أيضًا استخدام الماضي المستمر مع (when) والماضي البسيط لإظهار متى يقاطع حدث ما حدثًا آخر في الماضي.



e.g. The children were playing in the park when mom called them out.



e.g. When my dad came home, I was reading a book.

Exercises on Unit 9

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 My grandfather told us a funny .... last night.
a) toy b) game c) food d) story

2 The last part of a story is the ....
a) moral b) setting c) beginning d) ending

3 My birthday is a/an .... that happens every year.
a) beginning b) message c) event d) ending

4 Goha is the best .... in the story.
a) animal b) bird c) character d) woman

5 The .... begins his story by telling everyone the mystery.
a) carpenter b) narrator c) plumber d) nurse

6 The .... of the story is you can't make everyone happy.
a) moral b) book c) ring d) character

7 I am thirsty. I want a .... of water.
a) piece b) slice c) bottle d) loaf

8 This is your paper and you can write your .... here.
a) message b) plastic c) video d) board

9 I was a bit .... when I saw the lion at the zoo. It made me frightened.
a) scared b) easy c) hungry d) lazy

10 The .... boy waited for his sheep to drink.
a) doctor b) shepherd c) teacher d) scientist

11 A "..................................." is someone who lives in a village.
a) foreigner b) villager c) tourist d) visitor

12 The .... is a scary animal.
a) cat b) wolf c) bird d) fish

13 She loved sailing her ....
a) car b) taxi c) boat d) bus

14 He is so .... , he always makes me laugh.
a) boring b) funny c) bored d) busy

15 The sun was .... when we were at the park yesterday.
a) playing b) shining c) eating d) watching



2 Read and complete the text with words in the box:

A

coast – message – desert – market – sail

I live in Hurghada. It is an amazing place. There are lots to do and see here. I usually go to the .... (1) .... with my mother to buy our food. I enjoy living here as I live on the .... (2) .... and I always .... (3) .... my boat. Last week, I saw something in the water. I found a .... (4) .... in a bottle. I read it happily because it was for me.

B

moral – review – characters – funny – big

My name is Hadeer. I like reading stories and I am writing a .... (1) ...., of Goha's stories. I love the details he gives about the .... (2) ...., the setting, and everything that happens. Every story has a .... (3) .... that Goha wants to teach us. And his stories are both .... (4) .... and clever. People around the world always read about his stories.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 I was walking down in the street when I .... my old friend.
a) meeting b) met c) meets d) meet

2 She .... studying English yesterday afternoon.
a) was b) is c) are d) were

3 They were .... fast in the race yesterday evening.
a) run b) running c) runs d) ran

4 What .... you doing when your cousin came home?
a) did b) was c) are d) were

5 Ahmed and Eslam .... their breakfast at 7 am yesterday.
a) was having b) had c) were having d) has

6 A: Was she sleeping at 4 pm yesterday? B: No, she ....
a) were b) was c) weren't d) wasn't

7 I was drawing a picture when the light .... out.
a) going b) go c) went d) goes

8 I .... football when I hurt my legs.
a) playing b) play c) was playing d) were playing

9 What were they .... from seven to eight o'clock yesterday?
a) do b) doing c) did d) does

10 Eslam .... to music when the phone rang.
a) listened b) was listening c) listen d) were listening

4 Read and write the correct form of the (word)s between brackets:

1 They (was) .... drinking cola when I met them at the club.

2 She (is) .... playing board games at 7 o'clock yesterday.

3 What were you (read) .... when I called you?

4 A: Were you doing your homework yesterday evening?
B: No, I (weren't) ....

5 They were taking photos when Adel (was coming) ....

6 When she (gets) .... an email, she was texting her friend.

7 Sara was (make) .... a video call with her aunt yesterday evening.

8 I (traveling) .... to Alexandria when it rained.

9 She (cleaned) .... her room at 7 pm yesterday.

10 They (aren't) .... swimming in the sea yesterday morning.

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1 stories – popular – over – the world – His – are – all.
....

2 write – bottle – in – Let's – a – a message.
....

3 beach – beautiful – quiet – The – and – was.
....

4 enjoyed – about – favorite – her – She – things – reading.
....

5 boat – really – I – love – sailing – my.
....

Unit 10 Free as a bird

Vocabulary

English	Arabic
proverbs	أمثال
worm	دودة
feather	ريشة
together	معًا
careful	حريص
hatch (v.)	يفقس
eco-tourism	السياحة البيئية
sensible	منطقي
damage (v.)	يدمر
safari	سفاري
pollution	التلوث
sustainable	مستمر
oasis	الواحة
distance	مسافة
respect (v.)	يحترم
protect (v.)	يحمي
sunset	غروب الشمس
hiking	التنزه
tent	خيمة
tour	جولة سياحية
coral reefs	الشعاب المرجانية
underwater	تحت الماء
planet	كوكب
lizards	سحالي
area	منطقة
go sightseeing	يشاهد المعالم السياحية
eco-friendly	صديق للبيئة
early bird	الطير المبكر
successful	ناجح
flock	سرب/ قطيع
similar	مشابه
count (v.)	يعد
nest	عش
real	حقيقي
dare (v.)	يتجرأ
historical	تاريخي
mountains	جبال
environment	البيئة
simple accommodation	سكن بسيط
migrate (v.)	يهاجر
species	أنواع / فصائل
habitat	مسكن / بيئة طبيعية
ideal	مثالي
kingfisher	طائر الرفراف
flamingo	طائر النحام
crocodiles	تماسيح
camp	معسكر
different	متنوع/ مختلف
vacation	إجازة
swift	طائر السمامة
safe	آمن
scuba dive (v.)	يغوص
local communities	المجتمعات المحلية
migration	الهجرة



Language Focus

must / mustn't

We use "must" when we talk about something that we have to do or that is important to do.

نستخدم "must" عند التحدث عن شيء يجب علينا فعله أو مهم فعله.

Subject (الفاعل) + must + (inf.) الفعل فى المصدر + تكملة الجملة.

We must bring a tent.

يجب علينا إحضار خيمة.

We use "mustn't (must not)" when we are not allowed to do something.

نستخدم "mustn't (must not)" عندما يكون غير مسموح لنا بفعل شيء ما.

Subject (الفاعل) + mustn't + (inf.) الفعل فى المصدر + تكملة الجملة.

We mustn't swim here because there might be crocodiles!

لا يجب أن نسبح هنا لأن من المحتمل وجود تماسيح!

The Present Simple Tense

Affirmative Form:
صيغة الإثبات

I/ We/ They/ You/ اسم جمع + (inf.) الفعل فى المصدر + تكملة الجملة.

e.g. I go to school on foot.

He/ She/ It/ اسم مفرد + (inf. + s, es, ies) + تكملة الجملة.

e.g. Lama visits her grandparents every Friday.

e.g. She watches TV in the evening.

e.g. Omar studies his lessons in the afternoon.

Negative Form:
صيغة النفى

I/ We/ They/ You/ اسم جمع + don't + (inf.) الفعل فى المصدر + تكملة الجملة.

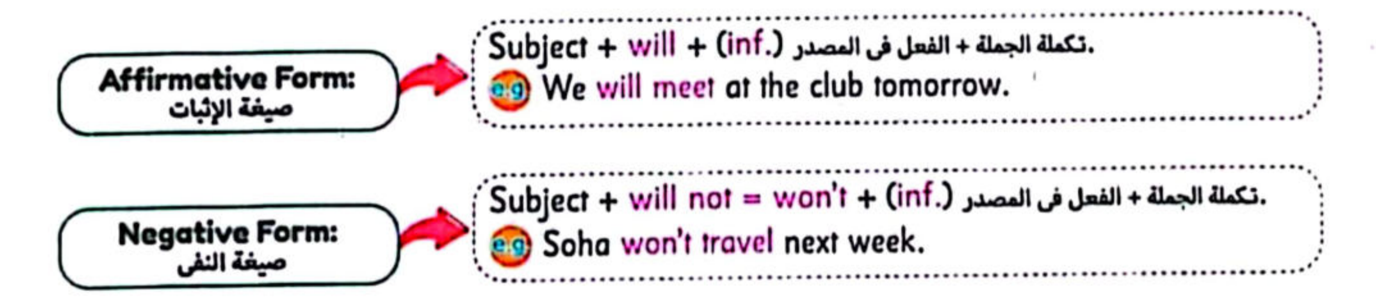
e.g. We don't have eggs for breakfast.

He/ She/ It/ اسم مفرد + doesn't + (inf.) الفعل فى المصدر + تكملة الجملة.

e.g. Ali doesn't play basketball.



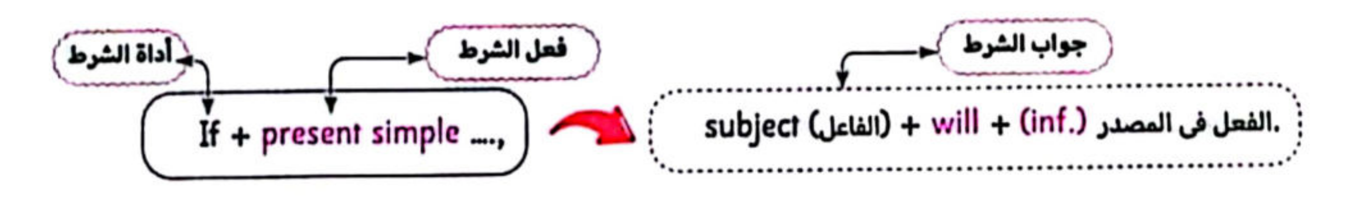
The Future Simple Tense



If (First conditional)

We use "If (First Conditional)" to talk about things that are likely to happen in the future.

نستخدم "If" الحالة الشرطية الأولى للحديث عن الأشياء التى من المحتمل أن تحدث فى المستقبل.



If I am hungry, I will eat a snack.

إذا شعرت بالجوع، فسأكل وجبة خفيفة.

If he doesn't leave now, he'll miss the bus.

إذا لم يغادر الآن، فسوف يفوته الأتوبيس.



Exercises on Unit 10

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 My mother always says the early .... gets the worm.
a) baby b) bird c) horse d) camel

2 You should study hard to be .... in your life.
a) true b) successful c) lazy d) exact

3 "Birds of a feather .... together" means that similar people like doing the same things.
a) block b) study c) flock d) go

4 There is no difference between the two boys. They look very ....
a) similar b) difficult c) hard d) bad

5 When something is ...., it happens and is true.
a) fake b) careful c) higher d) real

6 "..................................." is a way of traveling that doesn't damage the environment.
a) Eco-tourism b) Tourist c) Distance d) Pollution

7 "..................................." means a good idea that someone has thought about carefully.
a) Strange b) Successful c) Sensible d) Similar

8 The word "..................................." means having what you need, and nothing more.
a) sustainable b) simple c) ideal d) local

9 The "..................................." is somewhere to stay.
a) bank b) post office c) accommodation d) market

10 Last week, we went to a camp in the desert and stayed in a ....
a) sea b) farm c) garden d) tent

11 We can .... a lot of trees and flowers to make our environment clean.
a) damage b) plant c) eat d) destroy

12 To "..................................." means to like something and want to look after it.
a) snorkel b) migrate c) respect d) camp

13 The panda's natural .... is the bamboo forest.
a) habitat b) hobby c) camp d) meal

14 A "........................" is a well-known phrase about something which is generally true.
a) description b) proverb c) plan d) meaning

15 I love to go swimming and bird .... in warm weather.
a) snorkeling b) watching c) sleeping d) camping



2 Read and complete the text with words in the box:

A terrible – protected – scuba dive – respect – coral reefs

Last week, I read about The Ras Mohammed National Park. It is a fantastic area for locals and tourists to visit. People come from all over the world to snorkel and ....(1)............... . You can see ....(2)............... and lots of colored fish in the sea. The National Park is ....(3)............... because it is so beautiful. People who visit this amazing place must ....(4)............... nature.

B vacations – nests – migrate – species – animal

There are lots of interesting birds to see in our country. Many kinds of birds ....(1)............... because they must fly to different countries to find their food, make ....(2)..............., or have warmer weather. There are over 450 ....(3)............... of birds in Egypt, and people come from all over the world on ....(4)............... to see them. They take a lot of photographs with those lovely birds.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 We all must .... nature.
a) respecting b) respected c) respect d) respects

2 You .... throw trash on the floor.
a) must b) should c) mustn't d) can

3 You mustn't .... birds or animals because they can hurt you.
a) scare b) scary c) scared d) scares

4 You .... tidy your bedroom.
a) must b) mustn't c) shouldn't d) couldn't

5 You mustn't .... the music so loud.
a) turns b) turn c) turned d) turning

6 If you read more about the environment, you .... it.
a) would protect b) will protect c) protects d) protected

7 If she .... hard, she will get high marks in the next exam.
a) studied b) study c) studies d) will study





8 They will win the match if they .... well.

a) play b) played c) plays d) playing

9 If you don't eat healthy food, you .... be fit.

a) won't b) doesn't c) isn't d) didn't

10 If he .... finish his project, he will have a problem.

a) don't b) won't c) doesn't d) didn't

4 Read and write the correct form of the (word)s between brackets:

1 We (mustn't) .... respect our teachers.

2 They must (are) .... careful with the sharp knife.

3 We must (protected) .... our planet from danger.

4 You (must) .... make a lot of noise in the classroom.

5 If she cooks the lunch, her mother will (is) .... pleased with her.

6 We (will) .... go to the beach, if the weather is windy.

7 If he (do) .... sports, he will lose weight.

8 She won't buy a new car if she (don't) .... save money.

9 They will get up late if they (won't) .... sleep early.

10 If he (run) .... fast, he will win the race.

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1 count – before – hatch – they – Don't – chicken – your.

....

2 to – historical – visit – places– are – many – There.

....

3 Next week, – a – going – we're – tour – on.

....

4 We – litter – mustn't – drop – water – or – waste.

....

5 birds – are – for – great – Plants – insects – and.

....

Unit 11 How can I help?

Vocabulary

support (v.)	يدعم	volunteer (v.)	يتطوع
donate (v.)	يتبرع	participate (v.)	يشارك
kindergarten class	حضانة / روضة الأطفال	hospital	مستشفى
better	أفضل	neighbor	جار
gloves	قفازات	pick up (v.)	يلتقط
fingers	أصابع	look after (v.)	يعتني بـ ...
handle	مقبض	grabber	المنتزع
nature camera	كاميرا طبيعية	multi-grip	قبضة متعددة
joystick	عصا التحكم	install (v.)	يثبت
record (v.)	يسجل	film (v.)	يصور
give back (v.)	يرد الجميل	controller	جهاز التحكم
button	زر	press (v.)	يضغط
socialize (v.)	يكون علاقات اجتماعية	confidence	ثقة
fundraising	جمع التبرعات	reward	مكافأة / جائزة
jealous	غيور	sparrow	عصفور
waste	يهدر	university	جامعة
citizen	مواطن	reduce (v.)	يقلل
recycle (v.)	يعيد تدوير	community	مجتمع
biography	سيرة ذاتية	volunteering	التطوع
charity event	حدث خيري	social sciences	العلوم الاجتماعية
community worker	ناشط اجتماعي	fundraiser	جامع التبرعات

Language Focus

Infinitives of purpose

1. We use "to + a verb in the base form" to explain why we do something.
نستخدم «to + مصدر الفعل» لشرح سبب قيامنا بشيء ما.

to + (inf.) مصدر الفعل (الفعل بدون أى إضافات).



He uses his computer to do his homework.
يستخدم جهاز الكمبيوتر الخاص به لأداء واجباته المدرسية.

e.g.

We go to the park to play football.
نذهب للحديقة للعب كرة القدم.

Wh- question: السؤال باستخدام كلمة الاستفهام

2. We also use "to + a verb in the base form" to answer questions with "Why".
نستخدم أيضًا «to + مصدر الفعل» للإجابة عن الأسئلة بـ «لماذا».



A: Why do you use a multi-grip?
B: To open jars.

Adverbs

Adverbs are used to describe how things happen or are done.
تستخدم الأحوال لوصف كيفية حدوث الأشياء.

 He runs quickly.

We can make adverbs by adding: يمكننا تكوين الأحوال بإضافة:

(-ly) لمعظم الصفات



quick سريع → quickly بسرعة
quiet هادئ → quietly بهدوء
patient صبور → patiently بصبر

bad سيئ → badly بطريقة سيئة
kind عطوف → kindly بعطف
beautiful جميل → beautifully بطريقة جميلة



الصفات المنتهية ب (حرف ساكن + y)، يتم حذف ال (y) وإضافة (ily)

e.g. angry غاضب → angrily بغضب
happy سعيد → happily بسعادة

بعض الصفات لا تتبع القاعدة (irregular)

e.g. fast سريع → fast بسرعة
good جيد → well بطريقة جيدة
hard جاد → hard بجد

Adverbs can come before the verb:

الظروف يمكن أن تأتي قبل الفعل:

subject + adverb + verb ...

He quietly talked to his friend.

تحدث بهدوء مع صديقه.

Adverbs can come after the verb:

الظروف يمكن أن تأتي بعد الفعل:

subject + verb + adverb ...

She danced beautifully.

رقصت بشكل جميل.



The adverbs can't come between the verb and its object.

لا يمكن للأحوال أن تأتي بين الفعل والمفعول به.

She learned the rules quickly. ✓

She quickly learned the rules. ✓

She learned quickly the rules. ✗

Exercises on Unit 11

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 Our teacher always .... us to be better.
a) supports b) annoys c) looks d) participates

2 To ".................................." is to do a job or activity and not take any money for it.
a) volunteer b) donate c) participate d) support

3 The verb ".................................." means to take part in something.
a) decide b) participate c) paint d) train

4 My father was great when he .... money to help the poor.
a) decided b) joined c) donated d) started

5 I turned the .... and opened the door.
a) handle b) head c) nail d) hall

6 They will .... a heating and lighting system in the apartment.
a) play b) record c) install d) film

7 You can move in different directions to control a computer game with the ....
a) camera b) button c) grip d) joystick

8 Our teacher installed the .... to film the animals in the forest.
a) grabber b) nature camera c) skate board d) multi-grip

9 My hands weren't strong enough so I used a .... to open the glass bottle.
a) nature camera b) handle c) multi-grip d) chair

10 The ".................................." is a long metal stick with two fingers at the end.
a) grabber b) knife c) oven d) camera

11 You can use these gloves to .... the trash.
a) give up b) pick up c) look after d) give back

12 The ".................................." is something you press to make something happen.
a) bottle b) button c) handle d) break

13 ".................................." is to collect money for a charity.
a) Interview b) Confidence c) Fundraising d) Community

14 You must .... and interact with people in a friendly way.
a) organize b) collect c) receive d) socialize

15 Doing sports gives you ....
a) trips b) confidence c) illness d) advice



2 Read and complete the text with words in the box:

A neighbors – citizen – waste – plane – recycle

There are many different ways to be a good ....(1)................ . First, you must respect others and be polite and kind to your ....(2)................, help people who are old or sick. Then, you can reduce ....(3)................ and help the environment. If you have plastic bottles at home, ...(4)................ them. Let's be good citizens and make the world a better place.

B Volunteering – socialize – give back – look after – teenagers

You learn many important life skills when you volunteer. You learn how to ....(1)................ and talk to people you wouldn't usually meet. ....(2)................ also gives you confidence. It's amazing to see how ....(3)................ grow in confidence when they start volunteering. Fundraising helps charities get the money they need. It's good to ....(4)................ to the place where you live.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 A: .... does she wear this hat? B: To protect her hair from the sun.
a) What b) Who c) Why d) When

2 She bought chicken to .... her kids.
a) feeding b) feed c) feeds d) fed

3 I went to the market to .... some sugar.
a) buy b) bought c) buys d) buying

4 The girl was singing .... at the party.
a) happy b) sad c) bad d) happily.

5 He doesn't like playing chess. He plays it ....
a) well b) badly c) easily d) happily

6 My friend ate his sandwich ....
a) hungry b) hungrily c) slow d) kind

7 The baby is crying .... because he/she can't sleep.
a) quiet b) loudly c) happily d) good

8 My father is a .... doctor.
a) good b) well c) quickly d) slowly

9 He runs .... , no one in our team can beat him.

a) slow b) quiet c) fast d) beautiful

10 He talks .... on his phone.

a) patient b) sad c) angrily d) bad

4 Read and write the correct form of the (word)s between brackets:

1 He used this app (for) .... learn a new language.

2 A: (What) .... do you get up early? B: To do my homework.

3 Sara went to the library to (borrowing) .... some books.

4 Amira listens to English songs to (helps) .... her improve the language.

5 You must study (hardly) .... to pass your test.

6 We plays football (good) .... We practice it a lot.

7 He waited (patient) .... for the plane to arrive.

8 The students answer all the questions (easy) ....

9 She is so calm. She always speaks (quiet) ....

10 They are (well) .... players.

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1 wanted to – children – in – I – my school – help.

....

2 parents – toys – My – lots of – too – donated.

....

3 are – project – We – doing – a wildlife – school – at.

....

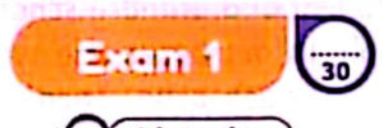
4 you – need to – a game – Do – with – play – me?

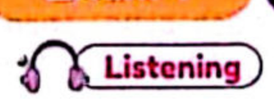
....

5 older – didn't – any – brother – find – The – gold.

....







30

Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: 6

1. The Ancient Egyptians loved animals and kept them as ....
   (a. best – b. pets – c. big – d. pests)
2. They really .... cats.
   (a. hated – b. adored – c. disliked – d. planned)
3. Some people kept ...., hippos, and lions which were dangerous.
   (a. snakes – b. cows – c. crocodiles – d. cats)
4. They loved birds like .... and the ibis.
   (a. eagles – b. falcons – c. tigers – d. rats)

Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: 4

1. When I was younger, I .... many games to play at home.
   a) visited b) cleaned c) made up d) invited
2. A ".............................." is an object used for fighting or hunting animals.
   a) metal b) weapon c) stone d) glass
3. The .... in this story are not real.
   a) characters b) categories c) crafts d) cashiers
4. The birds .... every year to find warmer weather.
   a) mine b) migrate c) mark d) add

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: 4

project – help – forward – down – reading

My name is Mazen. I'm in grade six. I love reading, so I decided to ....(1)............... out in the kindergarten class on Thursday by reading to the children. I love ....(2)............... stories with the younger children, and they like it, too. We're starting up a ....(3)............... where they think of their own stories next week. I'm looking ....(4)............... to that.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: (5)

My name is Amr. I am a student at a primary school. My father works as a doctor. He always helps sick people to get better. He works at a big hospital in Cairo. Last week, my sister had a stomach ache. Then, we went to the hospital quickly. She stayed for three days there. When we visited her, she was sad because she didn't like being in the hospital. I thought it would be nice to do something for children who are sick. My friends and I painted a lot of big pictures of flowers and beaches. Our parents donated lots of toys, too.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. When we are sick, we should go to the ....
   a) hospital b) garden c) school d) bank
2. Amr's father is a/an ....
   a) nurse b) dentist c) engineer d) doctor
3. Their parents donated lots of ....
   a) food b) money c) toys d) books

B Answer the following questions:

4. How long did Amr's sister stay in the hospital? ....
5. What did Amr and his friends do for sick children? ....

Writing

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: (3)

1. she – have – nice – Did – a – weekend? ....
2. is – There – figure – my – an action – bedroom – in. ....
3. love – this – visiting – I – year – every – place. ....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets: (2)

1. She (read) .... her favorite story when the telephone rang.
2. They must (following) .... the school rules.

7 Punctuate the following: (1)

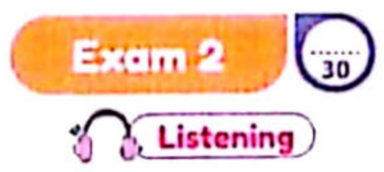
You can t make everyone happy ....

8 Write a diary of about FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements: (5)

"Your favorite game"

video games – board games

....



Exam 2 30

Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: 6

1. Dina is writing a .... of Goha's stories.
   (a. book – b. story – c. review – d. notebook)
2. The story is about a man who goes to the ....
   (a. market – b. shop – c. store – d. shop)
3. The setting is in the ....
   (a. river – b. countryside – c. town – d. city)
4. It is really a .... story.
   (a. bad – b. funny – c. sad – d. scary)

Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: 4

1. To ".................... " means to spend time with people in a friendly way.
   a) give back b) socialize c) respect d) whisper
2. When two things are ...., they might look the same or do the same things.
   a) different b) difficult c) similar d) difference
3. Holidays for eco-tourists often have simple ....
   a) habitats b) houses c) apartments d) accommodation
4. If people learn more about the environment, they'll want to .... it.
   a) trade b) protect c) damage d) feel

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: 4

modern – traded – Gold – jewelry – weapons

I read about the great Ancient Egyptians and found out that they .... (1) .... with other countries, and metal was one thing they traded. They used metal to make tools and .... (2) ...., so that they could hunt. .... (3) .... and silver were popular metals for making .... (4) .... and art to sell. Trade with other countries helped the Ancient Egyptians' economy. We should be proud of them.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: 5

Egypt is an amazing country. A lot of tourists come to visit Egypt from all over the world. There are lots of activities to do in Egypt and there are many historical places to visit, as well as stores, markets, and museums, tourists can go snorkeling in the Red Sea, go on

a desert safari, climb mountains, or sail on the Nile. Tourism is really important, but eco-tourism is becoming very popular, too. Eco-tourism is a way of traveling that doesn't damage the environment and it's more sustainable than traditional tourism.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Egypt is a/an .... country.
   a) bad b) small c) amazing d) terrible
2. The underlined word "damage" means ....
   a) fix b) mend c) destroy d) repair
3. There are many .... places to visit in Egypt.
   a) history b) scared c) historical d) bored

B Answer the following questions:

4. Summarize the passage in two sentences. ....
5. What activities can tourists do in Egypt? ....

Writing

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: (3)

1. farmers – a lot – produce – Egyptian – grain – of. ....
2. the – bird – The – worm – early – catches. ....
3. favorite – is – My – toy – a – set – train. ....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets: (2)

1. If we go to the zoo, we (does) .... see a lot of animals.
2. I was (at all) .... good at hiding, but I preferred skipping.

7 Punctuate the following: (1)

i think snorkeling is really amazing ....

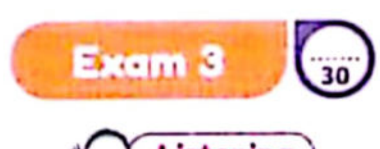
8 Write a text of about FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements: (5)

"Iron in Ancient Egypt"

- Why was iron special for Ancient Egyptians?
- What did the Ancient Egyptians use iron for?

....
....
....







1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: ....../6

1 I love playing all kinds of ....
(a. videos – b. games – c. foods – d. cards)

2 At school, we usually play ....
(a. hide and seek – b. hopscotch – c. video games – d. skipping)

3 My .... often beats me.
(a. father – b. sister – c. brother – d. family)

4 I play video games for about a/an .... on the weekend.
(a. week – b. month – c. hour – d. minute)

Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: ....../4

1 "................" means seeds from plants used to make flour and bread.
a) Wisdom b) Ibis c) Tears d) Grain

2 This stone is very .... - it's not easy to find.
a) rare b) common c) durable d) tough

3 "................" is to help others because you have received so much.
a) Give up b) Make c) Give back d) Hurt

4 I want to have a .... on your skateboard.
a) sleep b) go c) make d) beat

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: ....../4

lizards – tour – boats – tents – food

Hi, I am Eslam. I am so excited because I am going on a ....(1)......... to see the birds and animals which live near the water. I am going there with my friends. We will travel along the river in small ....(2)........., and camp in ....(3)......... at night. We hope to see ....(4)......... and turtles. I am sure that it will be amazing.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: ....../5

My name is Sara and I live in a beautiful city. I was born in Alexandria. I enjoyed studying science and decided to become a scientist when I grow up. I worked hard and studied well to join the university in Alexandria. There, I learned how to use science to look after the environment and Egypt's culture. I also entered



a problem-solving competition for scientists around the world. I started studying ways for villages to clean dirty water in a natural way and to recycle used water. I did a project which could help to stop water pollution.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Sara was born in ....
   a) Cairo b) Luxor c) Alexandria d) Aswan
2. She decided to be a ....
   a) doctor b) scientist c) gardener d) nurse
3. She did a project which could help to stop .... pollution.
   a) air b) noise c) water d) map

B Answer the following questions:

4. What did Sara do to join the university? ....
5. What did she learn at this university? ....

Writing

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: (3)

1. birds – eat – often – fish – plants – or – Those. ....
2. a bit – I – nervous – was – first – at. ....
3. too – You – get – to – close – birds – the – mustn't. ....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets: (2)

1. Ancient Egyptians (teach) .... their monkeys different tricks.
2. If I (was) .... hungry, I'll eat a snack.

7 Punctuate the following: (1)

did you go to the museum last weekend ....

8 Write an email of about FIFTY (50) words to tell your friend about your visit to the Museum of Ancient History using the following guiding elements:

From : ....

To : ....

Subject : ....

....

....

....

....





1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: 6

1 Many water .... migrate to Egypt.
(a. animals – b. people – d. birds – c. children)
2 You can see large flocks of them such as .... near water.
(a. swifts – b. eagles – c. falcons – d. pelicans)
3 These birds often eat fish or.............................. that live in rivers.
(a. parks – b. plants – c. grass – d. plans)
4 Many birds migrate to find .... weather.
(a. sunny – b. rainy – c. warm – d. cold)

Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: 4

1 Ancient Egyptians .... cats. This means they loved them so much.
a) hated b) disliked c) adored d) ate
2 To "..............................” means to be more successful than someone in a game.
a) lose b) give c) buy d) beat
3 You must press this .... to start the radio.
a) button b) game c) puddle d) card
4 Be .... with that sharp knife or you will hurt yourself.
a) crazy b) careful c) lazy d) careless

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: 4

action figures – made up – box – funny – delicious

Last week, I went to see my grandparents. I went to their house with my family. I found a ....(1)............... of my old toys at this house. There were a lot of my ....(2)............... . My favorite one was Spider-Man. I really enjoyed playing with it. I ....(3)............... lots of games for them. We enjoyed our time there. My grandma made us ....(4)............... lunch.



4 Read the text and answer the questions: 5



My name is Eslam. I am going to have the chance to do some underwater photography on my vacation. My friend, Samir is going with me. We are really



excited about that. We will set off on a tour from the beach in small boats, and sail out to places where we can see many different kinds of fish. There are bright-colored fish there, as well as coral reefs. The tour is only on Sunday and Thursday because this is a protected area, so there mustn't be too many trips.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The general idea of the text is about " .... " .
   a) A visit to the museum b) A snorkel safari
   c) A visit to a school d) A tour to watch birds
2. There are colored fish and .... there.
   a) coral reefs b) grass c) roofs d) sand
3. The underlined verb "set off" means ....
   a) move b) sleep c) eat d) drink

B Answer the following questions:

4. Why is the tour only on Sunday and Thursday? ....
5. What can they see there? ....

Writing

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: (3)

1. doesn't – Eco-tourism – the – damage – environment. ....
2. many – in Egypt – are – places – There – historical. ....
3. on – the – We're – to – a tour – going – birds – see. ....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets: (2)

1. They played the match (good) .... yesterday.
2. We were (watch) .... the movie at 9 pm last night.

7 Punctuate the following: (1)

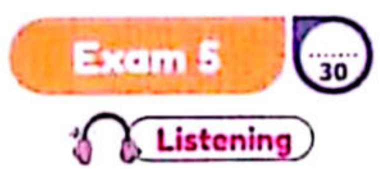
have you started the project yet ....

8 Write a blog of about FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements: (5)

"Desert habitat"

Which animals can you see there?
What is the weather like in the desert?

....
....
....



Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: 6

1. My favorite toy was a ....
(a. rollerblade – b. skiing – c. skateboard – d. rollercoaster)
2. I loved going to the .... and playing there.
(a. school – b. hospital – c. bank – d. park)
3. I had to wear a helmet and .... pads.
(a. knee – b. hand – c. foot – d. stomach)
4. I got my first skateboard when I was ....
(a. eight – b. seven – c. ten – d. two)

Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: 4

1. To " ...." is to take part in something.
a) donate b) support c) participate d) give
2. He deserves a .... for his great effort.
a) punish b) reward c) torch d) litter
3. We must .... our environment.
a) destroy b) play c) protect d) disturb
4. We should encourage more parks, gardens, and ....
a) green spaces b) planes c) wild d) trash

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: 4

tigers – young – distances – falcons – happy

Lot of interesting birds migrate Egypt, such as eagles, ...(1)..............., and swifts. I feel ....(2)............... when I see those birds. And there are many water birds migrate to Egypt, too. Some birds fly very long ....(3)..............., making the same journey year after year. Even ....(4)............... birds that migrate for the first time seem to know how to get to the place they need to be.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: 5

Last week, I read a story about two brothers who were very different. They had different styles. The older brother was greedy and loved money. He had a big farm and a lot of sheep. The younger brother was a very simple person.



He loved helping others. Although the older brother was rich, he never helped his younger brother. One day, the younger brother found a bird with broken wing. He cared for the bird all winter, and gave it food. The bird thanked him and gave him a big reward. He was so happy because he became the richest one in the village.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The general idea of the text is about a ....
   a) book   b) movie   c) tour   d) story
2. The younger brother liked .... others.
   a) heading   b) losing   c) helping   d) cleaning
3. The two brothers lived in a ....
   a) town   b) city   c) sea   d) village

B Answer the following questions:

4. What did the older brother have? ....
5. Who became the richest one at the end of the story? ....

Writing

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: (3)

1. think – we – protect – I – should – habitats – animal.
2. sister – didn't – me – practice – My – with.
3. do – play – hide – When – seek – you – and?

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets: (2)

1. (Do) .... you do your homework yesterday?
2. You are (at all) .... good at playing football. You win all the matches.

7 Punctuate the following: (1)

What does this proverb mean Hana ....

8 Write a Text of about FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements: (5)

"A description of your favorite game"

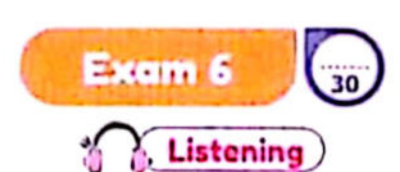
What is it ?

How often do you play it?

....

....

....



Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: (6)

1. The Ancient Egyptians started using .... many years ago.
   (a. silver – b. liquid – c. iron – d. plastic)
2. They worked with .... and bronze before they used iron.
   (a. copper – b. gold – c. cartoon – d. gas)
3. Ancient Egyptians .... made a famous dagger for Tutankhamun's tomb.
   (a. farmers – b. carpenters – c. craftsmen – d. doctors)
4. They mined iron from the ....
   (a. sky – b. ground – c. river – d. floor)

Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: (4)

1. We should protect our environment and .... eco-tourism.
   a) prevent b) support c) decrease d) stop
2. There are thousands of .... ibises in Saqqara alone.
   a) mummified b) killed c) popular d) colored
3. There is a chair .... to the desk.
   a) in front b) behind c) next d) on
4. To "...................." is to wrap in cloth to preserve for a very long time.
   a) memorize b) remember c) mummify d) flash

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: (4)

confidence – Fundraising – socialize – damage – teenagers

Doing voluntary work is very important. When you volunteer, you learn many important life skills. You learn how to ....(1).......... and talk to people you don't usually meet. It also gives you ....(2).......... . It's amazing to see how ....(3).......... grow in confidence when they start volunteering. ....(4).......... helps charities get the money they need. Volunteering is a great job.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: (5)

Thera a lot of different habitats in our country, such as the desert, sea, mountains, and rivers. It is good for everybody if we protect these habitats. For example, when a habitat is healthy, lots of animals can live in one place. With good eco-tourism,

people can come on wildlife watching holidays. This is good for the country and good for the people, too. I think we should all try to protect animal habitats. Animals need safe places to live, find food, and look after their babies. They are part of our planet.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The general idea of the text is about ....
   a) planets b) different people c) different habitats d) mountains
2. Animals need .... places to live in.
   a) boring b) dangerous c) safe d) terrible
3. When a habitat is ...., lot of animals can live in one place.
   a) unhealthy b) strange c) healthy d) terrible

B Answer the following questions:

4. What are the habitats that were mentioned in the text? ....
5. Summarize the passage in two sentences. ....

Writing

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: (3)

1. neighbor – always – is – kind – us – My – to. ....
2. give – First, – want – I – a reward – to – you. ....
3. have – a hot, – in – dry – climate – We – summer. ....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets: (2)

1. She answered the test (easy) ....
2. I (travel) .... to Paris last year.

7 Punctuate the following: (1)

do you want to read it ....

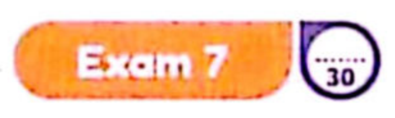
8 Write a text of about FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements: (5)

"Animals in Ancient Egypt"

Which animals did Ancient Egyptians want to keep?
Why were cats important for farmers?

....
....
....







1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: (6)

1. My friend Osama and I were playing in the ....
   (a. forest – b. beach – c. park – c. school)
2. The sun was ....
   (a. giving – b. shining – c. caring – d. going)
3. We were hoping to see animals and .... there.
   (a. games – b. movies – c. toys – d. birds)
4. Osama was a bit .... to enter the house.
   (a. happy – b. excited – c. scared – d. lazy)

Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: (4)

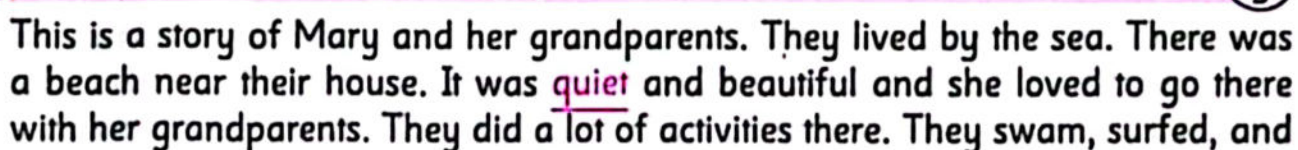
1. Birds of a .... flock together.
   a) wing b) feather c) fur d) arm
2. Egyptian farmers produce a lot of ....
   a) gray b) grain c) games d) fish
3. The writer arranges a happy .... to the story.
   a) meal b) ending c) plane d) back
4. We always .... people to be better.
   a) support b) shout c) damage d) play

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: (4)

preserve – climate – School – durable – sink

I went to the Museum of Ancient History last week. I met some students who are at Egyptian Eagles Primary ....(1).......... I learned about Ancient Egyptians artifacts. The ....(2)......... is hot and dry in Egypt. That's why many artifacts aren't damaged by cold and wet weather. This helps to ....(3)......... the artifacts. I knew that the Ancient Egyptians built the Pyramids with granite, a very hard and ....(4)......... stone.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: (5)


This is a story of Mary and her grandparents. They lived by the sea. There was a beach near their house. It was quiet and beautiful and she loved to go there with her grandparents. They did a lot of activities there. They swam, surfed, and





played games on the sand. One day, they were swimming in the sea when Mary saw a glass bottle in the water. Her grandpa took it, wrote a message on a piece of paper. Then, he folded the paper. Finally, he put the paper in the bottle and threw it out to sea for someone else to find.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. They lived by the ....
   a) garden b) sea c) bank d) bottle
2. Mary saw a .... bottle when she was swimming in the sea.
   a) metal b) plastic c) glass d) glasses
3. The word "quiet" means ....
   a) calm b) noisy c) busy d) hard

B Answer the following questions:

4. What activities did they do at the beach? ....
5. Summarize the story in two sentences. ....

Writing

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: (3)

1. did – use – you – What – materials – other? ....
2. saw – in – distance – We – house – the – a little. ....
3. can – large – see – flocks – birds – of – You – there. ....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets: (2)

1. She was (go) .... home when she met Amira.
2. If you don't take your medicine, you (won't) .... be sick.

7 Punctuate the following: (1)

siwa Oasis is a great place to see many water birds ....

8 Write an email of FIFTY (50) words to tell your friend about your favorite story:

17 / 32

From : ....

To : ....

Subject : ....

....

....

....

....



Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: 6

1. King Midas was walking in his ....
   (a. house – b. garden – c. company – d. hospital)
2. He tripped over a strange-looking ....
   (a. sheep – b. goat – c. cat – d. horse)
3. The king took it to his ....
   (a. cattle – b. candle – c. castle – d. kettle)
4. He gave it .... and warm bed.
   (a. toy – b. food – c. corn – d. water)

Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: 4

1. This weather is .... for a picnic. It's perfect.
   a) angry b) ideal c) sick d) ugly
2. When you feel ...., you're unhappy because someone has what you want.
   a) jealous b) excited c) pleased d) happy
3. I enjoyed .... when I went to the Red Sea.
   a) snorkeling b) studying c) crying d) fighting
4. The .... is the person who tells the story.
   a) character b) moral c) narrator d) builder

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: 4

litter – roof – tourists – coral reefs – places

I enjoy reading about the amazing ....(1)............... in Egypt. There is a very good place called The Ras Mohammed National Park on the Red Sea. It is a fantastic place for locals and ....(2)............... to visit. People come from all over the world to snorkel and scuba dive. You can see ....(3)............... and lots of brightly colored fish, and maybe sharks. But there is sometimes ....(4)............... on the beach, which is very bad for animals.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: 5

Our teacher talked about the different ways to be a good citizen. I was so excited to know about them. We should respect others and be polite and kind to our

neighbors. You can help people who are sick or you can call your neighbor to offer to do their shopping or do jobs for them at home. Try to reduce waste and help the environment. Don't use plastic bags or plastic bottles. If you have plastic bottles at home, recycle them. Let's be good citizens and make the world a better place.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. We should be .... to the others.
   b) angry b) rude c) unkind d) polite
2. The underlined word "recycle" means ....
   a) reuse b) replay c) repaint d) record
3. Try to .... waste and help the environment.
   a) damage b) destroy c) reduce d) reorder

B Answer the following questions:

4. What can you do to help your neighbors? ....
5. Summarize how to be a good citizen ....

Writing

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: (3)

1. made – true – The goat – wish – the king's – come. ....
2. like – all – games – kinds of – They – playing. ....
3. she – was – night – Why – sad – last? ....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets: (2)

1. He opened the door (quiet) .... because his little brother was sleeping.
2. You mustn't (leaving) .... your trash in the garden.

7 Punctuate the following: (1)

when she met her friends, they were having lunch ....

8 Write a text of about FIFTY (50) words using the guiding eler

15 / 32

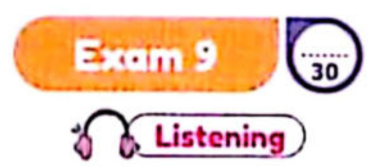
"Snorkel Safari"

coral reefs – underwater photography

....

....

....



Exam 9

....../30

Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: ....../6

1. Amira lives on the ....
   (a. village – b. coast – b. roof – d. desert)
2. She enjoys .... her boat.
   (a. selling – b. watching – c. diving – d. sailing)
3. She found a .... in a bottle.
   (a. text – b. message – c. moral – d. toy)
4. She was .... when she read it.
   (a. sad – b. tired – c. bored – d. surprised)

Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: ....../4

1. Press the .... to turn on the radio.
   a) handle b) stick c) button d) grabber
2. The .... of the story is the country.
   a) narrator b) setting c) moral d) character
3. "............................" means to have what you need, and nothing more.
   a) Sustainable b) Simple c) Ideal d) Perfect
4. To "..........." means to do things that help a particular person or group.
   a) participate b) join c) support d) organize

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: ....../4

mummified – dangerous – wisdom – safe – statues

The Ancient Egyptians liked animals and kept them as pets. The Ancient Egyptians believed that cats looked after them and kept them ....(1)............... . The Ancient Egyptians loved birds too, especially falcons and the ibis, which represented ....(2)............ . There are 500.000 ....(3)............... ibises in Saqqara alone. It is common to find mummified pets and ....(4)............... of animals in the tombs.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: ....../5

My friend Samy and I were playing in the forest at 12.30 pm yesterday. We enjoyed our time there. It was a lovely afternoon and the sun was shining. We weren't far from our home, and we were hoping to see some interesting



animals and birds. We were walking along the path when suddenly we saw a little house in the distance. Ali told me to enter the house, but I was a bit scared and I didn't want to enter. Finally, I followed him and we found a big treasure there. We were so happy.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. They were .... from their home.
   c) far b) near c) above d) on
2. The underlined word "scared" means ....
   a) afraid b) pleased c) funny d) busy
3. It was a nice ....
   a) evening b) morning c) dawn d) afternoon

B Answer the following questions:

4. What were they doing when they saw a little house? ....
5. What did they find in the little house? ....

Writing

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: (3)

1. known – Goha – as – in – Jha – is – Morocco. ....
2. this – Plant – seed – and – after – it – look. ....
3. did – she – What – weekend – do – last? ....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets: (2)

1. A: Were you watching the football match yesterday evening?
   B: No, I (be) ....
2. I heard two people laughing (loud) ....

7 Punctuate the following: (1)

i think diving is really amazing ....

8 Write a text of about FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements: (5)

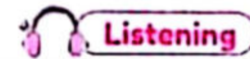
"How can you help others?"

support – project

....
....
....







1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: (6)

1. The images in .... video games are amazing.
   (a. ancient – b. modern – c. bad – d. old)
2. He has got a new games ....
   (a. racket – b. controller – c. console – d. button)
3. His sister enjoys playing .... games.
   (a. scientific – b. scary – c. terrible – d. adventure)
4. Video games can be a .... when you play them too much.
   (a. solution – b. problem – c. toy – d. shop)

Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: (4)

1. If something is ...., this means that someone has thought about it carefully.
   a) sensible b) scared c) lazy d) bored
2. ".................." is a way of traveling that doesn't damage the environment.
   a) Flying plans b) Snorkeling c) Eco-tourism d) Diving
3. The Ancient Egyptians built the Pyramids with ....
   a) grain b) plastic c) granite d) oil
4. We use the nature camera to .... how many animals and birds we see.
   a) record b) support c) organize d) meet

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: (4)

recycle – grow – waste – protect – watch

I think we should all try to ....(1)......... animal habitats. Animals need safe places to live, find food, and look after their babies. We can all think about things we can do to protect those habitats. For example, we mustn't ....(2)......... water or drop litter. We can ....(3)......... paper, so people don't cut down trees. We can also ....(4)......... flowers and plants because these are great for birds and insects.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: (5)

Last week, we did a wildlife project at school, and my teacher installed two nature cameras in the forest. We used them to film the wildlife. He put one on



the ground to film animals at night. He put the other one on a tree to film birds during the day. Then we recorded how many animals and birds we saw, and what they were doing. It was so interesting. We've learned a lot! I hope to try this project again. Our teacher will do it again if we study hard.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. They did a .... project at school.
   a) forest   b) park   c) wildlife   d) sea
2. He put the nature camera to film animals at ....
   a) noon   b) night   c) morning   d) afternoon
3. The underlined word "interesting" means ....
   a) amazing   b) boring   c) tiring   d) terrible

B Answer the following questions:

4. What will happen if they study hard?
5. Summarize the passage in two sentences. ....

Writing

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: (3)

1. Is – a hospital – house – in front of – your – there ? ....
2. She – good – skipping – is – so – at. ....
3. needs – buy – to – She – money – a dress. ....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets: (2)

1. He will buy a new camera if he (have) .... enough money.
2. They (doesn't) .... sleep late last night.

7 Punctuate the following: (1)

They mustn t speak loudly in the library ....

8 Write a text of about FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements: (5)

"Birds migration"

Why do many birds migrate to different countries?
Which birds can you see in Egypt?

....
....
....



Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: (6)

1. People who go .... watching will have lots to see.
   (a. bird – b. theater – c. film – d. video)
2. People mustn't get too .... to the birds.
   (a. far – b. fast – c. close – d. much)
3. They can take lots of ....
   (a. papers – b. cameras – c. photos – d. birds)
4. Wildlife is ideal for people who .... nature.
   (a. harm – b. respect – c. damage – d. hurt)

Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: (4)

1. A " .... " is an object made of stone or another material to look like a person or animal.
   a) statue b) mummify c) grain d) wisdom
2. My favorite .... was Spider-Man. I enjoyed playing with it.
   a) hobby b) action figure c) film d) book
3. She learned how to .... with people at her work. She is so friendly.
   a) deliver b) socialize c) watch d) donate
4. The .... of this story is that crime doesn't pay.
   a) character b) moral c) cartoon d) setting

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: (4)

trash – gloves – handle – grabber– sing

We do a beach clean-up every summer. We wear ....(1)........ to protect our hands. We carry black bags for the ....(2)........ we collect. We use a ....(3)........ to pick up the trash. It's a long metal stick with two fingers at the end. The fingers open and close when you squeeze the ....(4)........ at the top. You open and close the fingers to pick up the trash.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: (5)

There are a lot of amazing games. At the weekend, I have some free time so I play games with my friends. My friend Shady prefers playing board games. I think



board games are quite boring. I don't really like them. I love playing hide and seek. No one can find me. I am good at hiding. I can hide for a very long time. We can also play hopscotch. We use different colored chalk to draw the squares. My friend Samy is quite good at hopscotch, but I always beat him.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The underlined word "squares" is a kind of ....
   a) shapes b) days c) meals d) chips
2. Samy is quite good at ....
   a) hide and seek b) skipping c) football d) hopscotch
3. He can hide for a .... time.
   a) short b) long c) small d) little

B Answer the following questions:

4. What did they use to draw the squares? ....
5. When do they play games?

Writing

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: (3)

1. with – The Ancient Egyptians – countries – other – traded. ....
2. the story – is – the main – Who – character – in? ....
3. must – our – natural – We – protect – environment. ....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets: (2)

1. They (be) .... building sandcastles yesterday morning.
2. She is a (well) .... doctor. She helps many sick people.

7 Punctuate the following: (1)

the early bird catches the worm ....

8 Write a text of about FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements: (5)

"Ways to be a good citizen"

How do we protect the environment?
How do you help your neighbors?

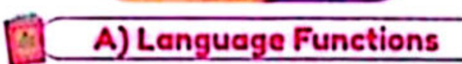
....
....
....



Al-Azhar Exams



Exam 1 (60)



A) Language Functions

1 Read and complete the dialog: (10)

weekend – picnic – hiking – boat – Park

Hamza : Hi Sama! Did you have a nice ....?
Sama : Yes, I went to Al-Azhar .... with my family.
Hamza : What did you do there?
Sama : We had a .... Then we went on a .... ride.
Hamza : Did you go ....?
Sama : No, we didn't. We wanted to, but it started to rain.

B) Vocabulary and Structures

2 Read and circle the odd one out: (10)

1. sailing – diving – snorkeling – eating (.............................)
2. narrator – ending – sleep – character (.............................)
3. playing – watching – keep – growing (.............................)
4. How – Why – Do – Which (.............................)
5. found – gave – did – go (.............................)

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: (10)

1. They didn't .... any help. They were creative.
   a) needed b) needs c) need d) to need
2. When something is ...., it happens and is true.
   a) real b) fake c) false d) bad
3. We played the match ....
   a) good b) well c) quick d) easy
4. Our father put the .... to film the animals in the forest.
   a) grabber b) nail c) nature camera d) button
5. If you .... eat well, you won't be active.
   a) doesn't b) won't c) don't d) hasn't
6. You can .... waste and help the environment.
   a) drop b) reduce c) replay d) make
7. She goes to the town to .... a new dress.
   a) buy b) bought c) buys d) buying
8. My mother always uses salt to .... food.
   a) reserve b) buy c) heat d) preserve

9 He isn't .... good at math.
a) too b) very c) at all d) much

10 Birds of a feather .... together.
a) flock b) block c) run d) eat

C) Reading Comprehension

4 Read the following passage, then answer the questions: 10

The Ancient Egyptians loved animals and kept many as pets. They especially adored cats, and there was a cat in almost every house. They believed that cats looked after them and kept them safe. They were also good pets because they cleaned themselves and kept the houses free of pests like mice and snakes. Farmers also liked them because cats helped them kill the mice and rats who wanted to eat grain.

A Answer the following questions:

1. What does the underlined pronoun "They" refer to? ....
2. What did the cats do to help farmers? ....
3. Why were the cats good pets? ....

B Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

4. The Ancient Egyptians adored ....
a) dogs b) snakes c) cats d) horses
5. The mice and rats wanted to eat ....
a) cats b) grain c) cake d) chocolate

D) Writing

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences: 10

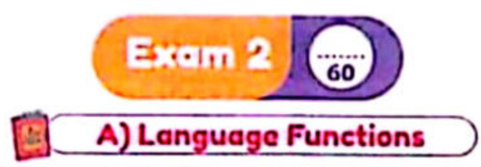
1. weekend – a – Did – have – you – good? ....
2. Ahmed – the – speaking – with – likes – English teacher. ....
3. weren't – at – They – sleeping – 7 pm – yesterday. ....
4. We – drop – mustn't – street – at – litter – the. ....
5. Do – want – to – a game – you – play? ....

6 Write an email of about five sentences to your friend to tell him about video games using these guiding elements: 10

play – build – adventure game – bricks – games console

From : ....
To : ....
Subject : ....

....
....
....
....



A) Language Functions

1 Read and complete the dialog: 10

games – play – chalk – hopscotch – hide and seek

Sara : What ....(1)............... did you like playing when you were younger?
Amira : I thought ....(2)............... was fun. I was good at hiding.
Sara : I really liked playing ....(3)............. with my friends.
Amira : How did you ....(4)...............it?
Sara : We used different colored ....(5)...............to draw the squares.

B) Vocabulary and Structures

2 Read and circle the odd one out: 10

1. going – using – plant – reading (.............................)
2. lazily – quickly – badly – sad (.............................)
3. liked – grew – touched – called (.............................)
4. small – well – good – quick (.............................)
5. saw – had – did – sleep (.............................)

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: 10

1. The baby is crying .... because he is hungry.
   a) quiet b) bad c) loudly d) sad
2. The verb "............................" means to take part in something.
   a) break b) park c) participate d) donate
3. There is a market .... to the house.
   a) in front b) next c) behind d) between
4. When we go camping, we stay in a ....
   a) house b) roof c) tent d) boat
5. Yesterday, I .... at home all day.
   a) is b) are c) was d) am
6. The rules of the game are very .... Let's try a game.
   a) simple b) scared c) ugly d) bored
7. She is a very .... person. All people support her.
   a) lazy b) creative c) bad d) small
8. They .... when they met Ahmed.
   a) ran b) were running c) run d) runs
9. The "............................" is a very hard and strong stone used for building.
   a) star b) granite c) paper d) leather



10 Did you .... the film yesterday?
a) saw b) see c) seeing d) sees

C) Reading Comprehension

4 Read the following passage, then answer the questions: 10

Our father told us the ways that make everyone a good citizen. Be polite and kind to your neighbors. Help people who are old or sick. You should call your neighbors to ask how you can help. You can offer to do their shopping or do jobs for them at home. You should protect the environment. You can reduce waste and help the environment. If you have plastic bottles at home, recycle them.

A Answer the following questions:

1 What should we do with our neighbors? ....
2 How can you protect the environment? ....
3 Summarize the text in one sentence. ....

B Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

4 You can .... waste and help the environment.
a) increase b) use c) drop d) reduce

5 If you have .... bottles at home, recycle them.
a) metal b) paper c) plastic d) wood

D) Writing

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences: 10

1 you – study – Did – last – English – night?
....
2 She – this – loves – place – visiting – year – every.
....
3 Why – many – we – artifacts – do – have?
....
4 found – of – toys – old – I – a box – my.
....
5 are – places – Egypt – There – historical – in – many.
....

6 Write a paragraph of about five sentences using the following guiding elements: 10

"A review about your favorite story"

characters – great – setting – ending – moral

....
....
....

PART 3 TAPE SCRIPTS

Exam (1)

The Ancient Egyptians loved animals and kept many as pets. They adored cats, and there was a cat in almost every house. Farmers needed cats to kill the mice and rats. As well as cats, many people kept monkeys and baboons. Some people even kept crocodiles, hippos, and lions which were dangerous and difficult to look after. Ancient Egyptians loved birds too, especially falcons and ibis.

Exam (2)

My name is Dina. I am writing a review of Goha's stories. This story is about a man who goes to the market with his son and a donkey. The setting is in the countryside, many years ago. Two of the characters–the man and his son–take turns riding the donkey because it is a long journey. It is really a funny story.

Exam (3)

I love playing all kinds of games. I play games outside with my friends. And at school, we usually play hopscotch and board games. I also enjoy playing board games with my sister, although she often beats me! My favorite games are video games. I don't play them very often, though. I play for about an hour on the weekend.

Exam (4)

Many water birds migrate to Egypt. You can see large flocks of birds such as pelicans near water, along the Red Sea and Mediterranean coasts, as well as on the Nile. These birds often eat fish or plants that live in rivers, lakes, oases, and seas. Lake Qarun in Fayoum is a good place to see flamingos. Many birds migrate to find a warm weather.

Exam (5)

When I was younger, my favorite toy was my skateboard. I loved going to the park and playing with my friends. They had skateboards, too, and it was really good fun. My skateboard was black, with orange and yellow stickers. I had to wear a helmet and knee pads. I got my first skateboard when I was seven. I liked it.

Exam (6)

The Ancient Egyptians started using iron more than 5,000 years ago. Before, iron, they worked with copper and bronze. Some of their early iron was from meteorites. Ancient Egyptian craftsmen made a famous dagger for Tutankhamun's tomb from a meteorite. They also mined iron from the ground. But they found it quite difficult to use because it needs a very hot fire to melt.



Exam (7)

My friend Osama and I were playing in the forest yesterday. It was a lovely afternoon and the sun was shining. We were near my home, and we were hoping to see some interesting animals and birds. We were walking along the path when suddenly we saw a little house in the distance. Osama was a bit scared and didn't want to enter the house.

Exam (8)

One night, king Midas was walking in his garden when he tripped over something on the ground. It was a strange-looking goat. It looked very sick. King Midas was a kind man, so he took the goat into his castle. There, he gave it food and warm bed. In the morning, the goat felt much better. The goat thanked the king.

Exam (9)

My name is Amira and I live in Alexandria. I live on the coast. I enjoy sailing my boat. There are many interesting things to do and see. I was sailing when I saw something strange in the water. I found a message in a bottle. I was really surprised when I read it because it was very old.

Exam (10)

The images in modern video games are amazing. I've got a new games console, which I share with my sister. She enjoys playing adventure games, where you can go to different places to find something important or solve a problem. They can be difficult, but I think they can be fun, too. Video games can be a problem when you play them too much.

Exam (11)

People who go bird watching in Egypt will have a lot to see. They mustn't get too close to the birds, because they might fly away, but they can watch from a safe distance and take lots of photographs. Wildlife watching is ideal for people who respect nature, and eco-tourism is a good way for people to do this.

